MAN IN ŚAIVA SIDDHĀNTA
TOWARD AN UNDERSTANDING OF MAN IN ŚAIYA SIDDHĀNTA:
A STUDY IN PHILOSOPHICAL ANTHROPOLOGY

By
JAYANDRA SONI, Ph.D

A Thesis
Submitted to the School of Graduate Studies
in Partial Fulfilment of the Requirements
for the Degree
Doctor of Philosophy

McMaster University
February 1987
Toward an Understanding of Man in Śaiva Siddhānta: A Study in Philosophical Anthropology

Jayandra Soni, B.A. (University of Durban-Westville)
M.A. (Banaras Hindu University)
Ph.D. (Banaras Hindu University)

Professor K. Sivaraman

xviii, 340
Abstract

The thesis is a philosophical and thematic study based on a Sanskrit commentary to the Śivajñānabodham, one of the basic texts of Śaiva Siddhānta, an important though relatively unnoticed religio-philosophical school of Indian thought. The text has the remarkable feature—apart from inspiring several voluminous commentaries on it—of containing only twelve verses, of two lines each. My thesis is based on one such commentary in Sanskrit called Śivāgrabhāṣya by Śivāgrayogin (sixteenth century).

I began the thesis by arguing that, contrary to a prima facie acquaintance with Indian thought, there is a philosophical anthropology implicit in several schools of Indian philosophy, although it may not be clearly discerned by that name. I have tried to show in any case that the Śivāgrabhāṣya, in terms of its own thematic focus, has a claim to being a philosophical anthropology—a claim borne out by the fact that the author of the text himself asks: "Who are the beings for whom ... this world is produced?"

It is clear that man is the focus of his attention in answering the question and, from his insightful and elaborate deliberations, one can see a philosophical anthropology emerging. I have located the problem of man within this text and have attempted to elicit from it, by a
careful and selective analysis, adequate material toward a plausible reconstruction of the philosophical anthropology I see contained in it.

Śivāgrayogin deals with the theme concerning man on at least two basic premises, viz., that of man as a being who possesses limited knowledge about the nature of ultimate reality, in which context the idea of fallible man emerges, and that of man as a being involved in the world. Both these postulates imply that man is a fettered being, endowed with the possibility of a condition of unfettered existence, i.e., with the possibility of an existence which can claim freedom from fettered life. Gnosis is said to be the only means for liberation—a means that, by its own inherent logic, is efficacious ultimately through divine grace. Life in the world is itself made possible through a "veiled" grace which, when "manifest", effects a due unleashing of man's powers of consciousness. The impact of Śivāgrayogin's point that man is to be defined essentially in terms of consciousness, has a special and striking significance in the light of his discussion on what constitutes freedom and liberation. Indeed, the condition of the possibility of the latter serves as the basis for the former.

What I have found unique to the Śaiva Siddhānta understanding of man is its attempt not only to analyze man's essential nature as radically different from that of the world—and, indeed, a world in which a scope for
liberation is afforded—but, also, its attempt to account for the nature of man's so-called bound existence in the world itself. I have attempted to approach Śaiva Siddhānta philosophical anthropology from the latter standpoint, i.e., by expounding and analyzing the Śaiva Siddhānta description of man in the world, I have sought to bring out the impact of its view that the intrinsic nature of man be defined essentially by consciousness.

The Śivāgrahāṣya has never been translated, nor is it anymore available in print. My thesis makes a contribution to knowledge because it is based almost entirely on this text and because it contains translations of several portions related to the topic of the thesis. From my own carefully selected and specific perspective, my thesis is an encyclopaedic view of Śaiva Siddhānta and gives a glimpse into the wealth of untapped source material in a relatively ignored area of research.
Preface

Śaivism in India has a rich and vast tradition and Śaiva Siddhānta is one of the schools which has preserved its philosophical and religious heritage in its continued practice. The form in which Śaiva Siddhānta has come down to us today is largely based on the systematization of it in the literature--based ultimately on the Āgamas for their authority--that emerged through the influence of Meykāṇṭhadeva (thirteenth century). One of the most basic texts of the school is the Śivajñānabodham which has the remarkable feature--apart from inspiring several voluminous commentaries on it--of being a text comprising only twelve verses, of two lines each. One such commentary in Sanskrit is that of Śivāgrayogin (sixteenth century), on which this thesis is largely based.

It has been a privilege for me to have had access (through Professor K. Sivaraman's kind favour, whom I further acknowledge below) to this valuable text called Śivāgrahāṣya. It is a work that has not been given much, if any, attention--although in the Preface to his book on Śaivism, Professor Sivaraman says that it is the principal Sanskrit text "utilised in the writing of the book," he does not focus on it, besides drawing from several other sources, in keeping with his attempt at a "systematic analysis of the
chief concepts of Śaiva Siddhānta, less as a textual exposition than as a free problematic construction within the framework of textual interpretation..." I have concentrated solely on this text for the justification of the Śaiva Siddhānta standpoint and, also, more specifically, for locating the problem of man within it and for eliciting from it adequate material toward a plausible reconstruction of the philosophical anthropology in it.

The Śivāgrahāśya has never been translated, nor is it anymore available in print, and if only for the portions translated here for the first time, this thesis makes a small contribution to a relatively neglected area of rich source material. Śivāgrayogin's commentary is voluminous (the Grantha edition is over 550 pages) and out of necessity, apart from a personal interest in specific issues, I have made a selective study. One of the underlying questions that directed the course of the thesis is: what is Śaiva Siddhānta? In attempting to answer this question, I ventured on a thematic study of one, albeit central, concept in Śaiva Siddhānta, viz., that of man (the word carries the weight of its technical, philosophical use, without any bearing on the semantic weight that can be put on its use as a masculine gender word).

In the thesis I have attempted to give a positive interpretation of the text as it spoke to me. I have tried, in this way, to make the text alive and to show that the
questions it answers—the questions which I carefully chose to ask—bear a timeless dimension about them, i.e., the basic questions concerning the nature of man in a study of philosophical anthropology, are relevant each time they are asked, with the possibility of the old answers bearing new significance and meaning. It is in this sense that the thesis is a philosophical and thematic study. I have striven to understand the text itself, to see what answers it itself gives to the basic question in philosophical anthropology—Śivāgrayogin himself asks: "Who are the beings for whom ... this world is produced?" Man is the focus of his attention in answering the question and, from his insightful and elaborate deliberations, a philosophical anthropology emerges.

In trying to follow Śivāgrayogin within the confines of my selected questions, I have not allowed myself to be distracted by historical and sociological analyses which, no doubt, make their own contributions as disciplined studies dealing with specific questions. Without minimising their significance, I think that these disciplines would answer questions I have chosen not to ask. Apart from those reasons which have to do with my own area of expertise—which is restricted to a conceptual and thematic elucidation of ideas—there is also the problem of a paucity of authentic historical material on which to rely in attempting to relate Śivāgrayogin to his predecessors and
contemporaries. What we have are only legendary accounts which are given in introductions to Sanskrit texts, without any supporting documentation. Even his dates cannot be fixed with precision, oscillating within a hundred years.

It is my conviction that, contrary to a prima facie acquaintance with Indian thought, philosophical anthropology underlies several schools of Indian philosophy, although it may not go by that name. I have argued in any case, that Śivāgrayogin's commentary on the Śivajñānabodham makes an implicit claim to being a philosophical anthropology—his basic question cited above bears out this claim. In presenting the Śaiva Siddhānta view, he deals with the theme concerning man on at least two basic premises, viz., that of man as a being who possesses limited knowledge about the nature of reality, in which context the idea of fallible man emerges, and that of man as a being involved in the world. Both these postulates imply that man is a fettered being endowed with the possibility of a condition of unfettered existence, i.e., with the possibility of an existence claimed to be a liberation from fettered existence. Gnosis is said to be the only means for liberation, a means that is efficacious ultimately through divine grace. Life in the world is itself made possible through a "veiled" grace which, when "manifest", effects the unleashing of man's powers of consciousness. The impact of Śivāgrayogin's point that man is to be defined essentially in terms of
consciousness, has a special and striking significance in the light of his discussion on what constitutes freedom and liberation. Indeed, the condition of the possibility of the latter serves as the basis for the former.

What I have found unique to the Śaiva Siddhānta understanding of man is its attempt not only to analyze man's essential nature as radically different from the nature of the world--and, indeed, a world in which a scope for liberation is afforded--but, also, its attempt to account for the nature of man's so-called bound existence in the world itself. I have attempted to approach Śaiva Siddhānta philosophical anthropology from the latter standpoint, i.e., by expounding and analyzing the Śaiva Siddhānta description of man in the world, I have attempted to bring out the impact of the Śaiva Siddhānta view that the intrinsic nature of man be defined essentially by consciousness.

It will be noticed that I have made no reference to any Tamil work for this study in Śaiva Siddhānta. I am aware that a comprehensive study of the system should take into account the valuable Tamil material that has moulded its contribution to Indian thought. One would constantly have to refer, at least, to Aruṇanti's Śivajñānasiddhiyār (thirteenth century) and its basic commentaries. The Siddhiyār is a Tamil work on the Tamil version of the Śivajñānabodham which I had read with Professor K.
Sivaraman's expert elucidations when he introduced me to Śaiva Siddhānta. I had a glimpse into the wealth of its ideas when I formally studied Tamil in Madras, while working on the Śivāgrahāṣṭya. However, the literature, both in Tamil and in Sanskrit, is vast and I chose to restrict my study to Śivāgrayogin's Sanskrit work. He himself makes no reference in it to the Tamil texts and, in this, I followed him closely.

Another limitation that might be pointed out is that I have conveniently avoided discussing in detail certain issues which I think are only indirectly connected with a study of man in Śaiva Siddhānta, e.g., in the context of man as a cognitive being, the intricate logical debate on fallacious reasoning (hetvābhāsa), and the role of traditional ritual purification or initiation (dīkṣā) that man is required to undergo. I have chosen not to delve into these issues in my attempt to present from a specific perspective an encyclopaedic view of Śaiva Siddhānta based on the Śivāgrahāṣṭya, the only work of its kind. Bearing in mind these limitations and the restricted scope of the thesis, the word "toward" in the title of this study is to be taken literally.

It has been a privilege for me to directly work under the supervision of Professor K. Sivaraman. He is one of the leading Śaiva Siddhānta experts in the world and with his own involvement in the tradition, I have derived the
benefits of his insights which he conveyed with great authority on the subject. I am grateful for the innumerable patient hours, often passing beyond midnight, in laying the foundations to help me try to understand the intricate and complicated system of Śaiva Siddhānta. I am particularly indebted to him for the convincing suggestion to undertake the present study. I deeply appreciate his confidence in me at least to make an earnest attempt to unravel a small part of this generally ignored area of research. He entrusted me with his personal and valuable Devanāgarī manuscript of the Śivāgrabhasya, transliterated from the Grantha original. It was this kind and unhesitant gesture, together with his encouragement, that facilitated my research.

I am extremely thankful to the other members of my supervisory committee, Professors Arapura, Vallée, and Madison, for their constructive comments and valuable suggestions. Professor Arapura, especially, has been most helpful with the many valuable suggestions and clarifications which only he as an expert in Indian philosophy could make. He has always been available at the shortest notice to discuss the several problematic issues that confronted me during the writing of the thesis. It is with sincere thanks, too, that I acknowledge the promptness with which all my supervisors carefully went through my thesis.

I would like to acknowledge Dr. W.J. Slater, the
Associate Dean, McMaster University, for being instrumental in making a travel grant available to me to work on my thesis in Madras from May 1985 to April 1986.

In Madras I had the privilege of working with Professor M. Narasimhacary of Madras University. His expert handling of the Sanskrit, with extreme patience and didactic skill, unravelled the innumerable difficult constructions of scholastic Sanskrit. I appreciate the seriousness with which he undertook to read the entire sahghrahabhāṣya of the Śivāgrabhāṣya with thoroughness and the much needed urgency. I especially note the informality with which he gave me a glimpse into the benefit and value of traditional learning in India.

The Adyar Library, Madras, provided the ideal academic atmosphere in which to work. I had the added benefit of fruitful discussions with Professor K. Kunjunni Raja, Sanskritist and Honorary Librarian of the Adyar Library. He always made himself available immediately to attend to my numerous queries with great expertise and patience. The Librarian, Mrs. Seetha Neelakanthan, and the Assistant Librarian, Ms. Yamuna, were extremely helpful and made available to me all the library facilities, including a private section of the library in which to work.

The Theosophical Society itself, in which the Adyar Library is housed, provided the serene atmosphere and convenient living conditions in which to pursue consistent
and continued work and I acknowledge the Society with gratitude.

Professor R. Balasubramaniam, Director of The Dr. S. Radhakrishnan Institute for Advanced Study in Philosophy, Madras University, was very helpful not only in making available to me the facilities of the Institute's Library but, also, in discussing several issues related to my thesis. Further, while in Madras I had the benefit of useful and elucidating discussions with Professors V.A. Devasenapathi and P. Thirugnanasambandhan.

I wish to acknowledge the interest shown in my thesis topic by Pandit N.R. Bhatt of the French Institute of Indology in Pondichery. I have had the privilege of discussing with him some crucial issues concerning Śaiva Siddhānta, and Śaivism in general, and to have been able to take note of his insights and observations which carry the weight of years of involvement with the tradition. I also appreciate having been able to use the facilities of the Institute. I note especially the free access given to researchers to the hundreds of manuscripts, either in original or in transcript form. One can hardly not be struck by the wealth of material there that still needs to be researched in the relatively virgin field of Śaiva Siddhānta, and especially Āgama, studies.

To my friends Jane and Curt, I say special thanks for expeditiously word-processing the thesis.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 1</th>
<th>Introduction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>Some basic questions in philosophical anthropology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>Philosophical anthropology in Indian thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>The terminological framework supporting Šaiva Siddhānta philosophical anthropology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 (a)</td>
<td>The ontological categories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 (b)</td>
<td>The cosmological categories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>Karman in Šaiva Siddhānta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>Summary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>The texts on which the study is based</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 2</th>
<th>The definitions of man</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>Man and the states of consciousness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>Toward a general definition of man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>Toward a specific definition of man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>Summary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 3</th>
<th>Man as a cognitive being</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>Cit-śakti as the only means of valid cognition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PAGE

Abstract iii
Preface vi
Scheme of Transliteration xviii

Chapter 1 Introduction 1
1.1 Some basic questions in philosophical anthropology 1
1.2 Philosophical anthropology in Indian thought 6
1.3 The terminological framework supporting Šaiva Siddhānta philosophical anthropology 10
1.3 (a) The ontological categories 10
1.3 (b) The cosmological categories 20
1.4 Karman in Šaiva Siddhānta 41
1.5 Summary 55
1.6 The texts on which the study is based 59
Notes 63

Chapter 2 The definitions of man 82
2.1 Man and the states of consciousness 82
2.2 Toward a general definition of man 86
2.3 Toward a specific definition of man 109
2.4 Summary 135
Notes 138

Chapter 3 Man as a cognitive being 149
3.1 Cit-śakti as the only means of valid cognition 149
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>Sense perception <em>(pratyakṣa)</em></td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 (a)</td>
<td>Sense organ perception</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 (b)</td>
<td>Internal organ perception</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 (c)</td>
<td>Independent perception</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>Inference <em>(anumāna)</em></td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>Verbal testimony <em>(sabda)</em></td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4 (a)</td>
<td>The validity of the Āgamas</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4 (b)</td>
<td>Śaiva Siddhānta theory of language</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>Śaiva Siddhānta theory of error</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5 (a)</td>
<td>Doubt <em>(saṁśaya)</em></td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5 (b)</td>
<td>Misapprehension <em>(viparyaya)</em></td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5 (c)</td>
<td>Memory <em>(smrīti)</em></td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 4  
Man and the discipline *(sādhana)*  
4.1 Gnosis as the only means for man's freedom  
4.2 The dissociation from karman  
4.3 Dissociation from māyā and ānava-malam  
4.4 The concept of non-difference  
4.5 The discipline seen as 'ten actions' *(daśa-kārṣṇi)*  
4.6 On the non-contact with malam  
4.7 The liberated being *(jīvan-mukta)*  
Notes  
Conclusion
Appendix 1: Table of Śaiva Siddhānta Categories

Appendix 2: The text of the Śivajñānabodhī from Śivāgrayogin's Śivāgrahāśya

Appendix 3: The transliteration from the Sanskrit of Śivāgrayogin's discussion "defining cit-śakti's validity as the means of cognition"

Selected Bibliography
### Scheme of Transliteration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vowels</th>
<th>Consonants</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>अ - a</td>
<td>क - k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>आ - a</td>
<td>ख - kh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>इ - i</td>
<td>ग - g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ई - i</td>
<td>घ - gh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>उ - u</td>
<td>न - n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ऊ - u</td>
<td>प - p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ऋ - ri</td>
<td>छ - c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ऌ - ri</td>
<td>ज - j</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ए - e</td>
<td>झ - jh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ऐ - ai</td>
<td>ञ - ñ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ओ - o</td>
<td>ठ - t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>औ - au</td>
<td>ड - th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>एँ - e</td>
<td>ठ - th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>एँ - e</td>
<td>ठ - th</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Anusvara (·) – m**

**Visarga (°) – n**

xviii
CHAPTER 1

INTRODUCTION
1.1 Some basic questions in philosophical anthropology

The question whether there is indeed a concern in Indian thought of what comes under the theme of 'philosophical anthropology' is a moot one, especially since it has been said that the theme is conspicuous by its very absence. If, however, the inquiry about the nature of man is "the basic question or starting point of anthropology"\(^{2}\), then access is provided into practically all the systems of thought in India for an investigation from the standpoint of philosophical anthropology. The problem of what exactly constitutes the essential nature or characteristic nature of man can be said to be common, \textit{mutatis mutandis}, to all Indian systems of thought, even for those who deny—as the Buddhists and Cārvākas do—a permanent, unchanging principle in man. In this context there is no semantic difference between what constitutes self-knowledge and what concerns the inquiry into the nature of man. A study of man, among other things, must necessarily be a study of man in the world, of man in relation to the inalienable environment. Whilst man and the world have to be investigated together, indeed at one and the same time—insofar as man forms part of the world—both cannot be approached by the same mode of investigation:

We cannot discover the nature of man in the same way that we can detect the nature of physical things. Physical things may be described in terms of their objective properties, but man may be described and defined only in terms of his consciousness.\(^{3}\)
Whereas the description and definition of man through the mode of consciousness seems to be the proper formula for an inquiry into the nature of man, it seems also proper to say, in the context of man in the world:

Contradiction is the very element of human existence. Man has no "nature" - no simple or homogeneous being. He is a strange mixture of being and nonbeing. His place is between these two opposite poles.4

The questions which are universally accepted in philosophical anthropology are the basic ones of epistemology, ethics, and theology asked by Kant: "What can I know?" "What ought I to do?" "What may I hope?"5 This point, together with Feuerbach's claim that "man can be used as the common denominator of philosophy,"6 makes possible an investigation from the perspective of philosophical anthropology of any system of thought that attempts a description and definition of man in the world. Such an investigation would be meaningful even if--as is the case with several Indian schools of thought--the essential nature of man is ultimately contrasted with that of the physical, empirical world, through which, in fact, the former may be realized. Thus, one of the most significant goals of philosophical anthropology is its "attempt to construct a scientific discipline out of man's traditional effort to understand and liberate himself."7 From the perspective of the Śaiva Siddhānta tradition, this goal is identical with the soteriological function furnished by the analysis of the
system of categories which constitute our knowledge of the nature of ultimate reality, of which man's essential nature occupies a central position.

One of the notable features that characterized philosophical anthropologists in the western tradition was "the conviction that the theory of knowledge had reached a desperate crisis" and that:

Traditional theory of knowledge is seen by them as occupied only with one of the functions of consciousness; and consciousness, in turn, is understood to present only a part of the forces shaping human reason (as distinguished, in the Kantian sense, from understanding).

Without stretching the argument too far, this point can be transferred to the Indian context where for such schools as Sāṅkhya, Yoga, and Vedānta, the nature of consciousness (cit) is considered to constitute the essential nature of man and, particularly in Śaiva Siddhānta, where consciousness is also not only the factor which makes knowledge as such possible but is the ultimate means by which cognition is possible as well. Further, in Śaiva Siddhānta, the manifestation of consciousness, evident in its epistemological operation in man, is but a limited expression of its powers—but through which, nonetheless, access can be provided to a knowledge of the full range of consciousness and its powers. It is in this sense that Śaiva Siddhānta can be said to address the theme of contemporary philosophical anthropology, namely, "to establish a complete picture of the potentialities open to
In contrast to things which always remain unchanged in our knowledge of them, it is significant to note at the outset of any philosophical anthropology "one unusual and important fact: man's knowledge of man is not without effect on man's being." 11 This point has a direct bearing on "the influence of human self-interpretation on human self-formation" 12 and with this the theme, with its focus on the nature of the species 'man', is now transferred particularly to the individual of this species. It is in this context that such concepts as 'self-knowledge', 'selfhood', self-realization', self-consciousness', 'self-understanding', and the general concern with the problem of the 'self' become meaningful within the specific theme of man. A brief, concise description of what constitutes the ultimate significance of anthropology which captures the ongoing concern with it from the philosophical standpoint--applicable also within the Indian tradition--is given by Michael Landmann:

Man does not, like other beings, simply exist, but he inquisitively asks about and interprets himself; the concept of man (anthropos) implies anthropology. This is not mere optional, theoretical speculation; it springs from the deepest necessity of a being that must shape itself and therefore needs an orientational model or Leitbild to go by. Man's incompleteness is compensated for by self-understanding, which tells him how he can perfect himself. His interpretation of himself does not stand separate from an immutable reality; rather, although intending merely to interpret, it has a formative effect on that reality. 13
Śaiva Siddhānta offers precisely such a Leitbild and the task of this study is to attempt to extract from this theological system of thought those features which fall specifically within the section dealing with man. It may be noted here that whilst Śaiva Siddhānta anthropology is inextricably connected with Śaiva Siddhānta theology, special attention is given to the former, as the title of this study explicitly states. Apart from brief references to place the task at hand within the context of the entire Śaiva Siddhānta tradition, the theological aspect will be dealt with summarily at the end of the study to show specifically how the anthropology forms part of the theology.14

Despite the fact that, especially since the turn of the century, philosophical anthropology encompasses a vast scope absorbing elements of different disciplines,15 what Max Scheler wrote before World War I in his essay "On the Idea of Man" is no less profound today: "In a certain sense all central problems of philosophy can be traced back to the question of what man is."16 Although this is a wide conception of what philosophical anthropology attempts to deal with, it still refers to what constitutes its distinctive feature and original meaning, namely, to describe "the basic knowledge of human nature and of the human condition."17 This point cannot be taken to mean that philosophical anthropology furnishes final answers to the
problem of man without concern for what is a truism in any philosophical activity, viz., without taking into account the variables in all facets concerning man:

Anthropology, far from ignoring variability, supports it by revealing the conditions that cause it. Its relationship to human variability is like that of structural linguistics to the variety of languages.\textsuperscript{18}

Transferred to the Indian context, this means that whilst a description is attempted of what constitutes the essential nature of man, the description also attempts to account for the evident multifaceted and multidimensional nature of man in the world. Śaiva Siddhānta is one \textit{Leitbild} in this context.

In the light of what has been said above, the implicit answer to the question concerning whether there is at all a concern in Indian thought of what comes under the theme of philosophical anthropology, is obviously in the positive.

1.2 Philosophical anthropology in Indian thought

Insofar as the classical systems of Indian thought generally agree that liberation (mokṣa or mukti) is the highest aim to be achieved, it is man who is directly addressed as the one supremely capable of realizing this goal.\textsuperscript{19} This implicit anthropology, or focus on man, serves a soteriological function in the philosophical systems whose ultimate aim is mokṣa. It is significant to note that for
each of the four traditionally accepted objects of human pursuit (purusātmanas) not only does the word for 'man' have its equivalent in Sanskrit (purusā), but that among these, liberation is the highest goal man can strive for. The significance of this lies in the fact that liberation is to be pursued by man, that it is an endeavour intrinsically human, and that it is a goal which is identical with the realization of man's essential nature which, by comparison, is inadequately presented in the other pursuits.

Further, there is no single perspective in the Indian tradition which can claim the monopoly for furnishing universally accepted solutions to the problem of man. It is a noteworthy fact that there has been a considerable "interplay among the viewpoints" evident in the elaborate philosophical argumentation of the literature of practically all the systems in India, even though the 'opponent', or the opposite viewpoint, may not be explicitly stated. What this signifies is that though the other views are criticized there is, nonetheless, an awareness of the various perspectives or standpoints of the other schools, albeit unacceptable. And insofar as the subject of the debate on the theme of mokṣa is man, each school implicitly develops its own anthropology.

Whilst the views on mokṣa as an object of human pursuit (purusārtha) represent the soteriological aspect of each viewpoint, they permeate, nonetheless, the other
branches of philosophical activity, namely, epistemology, ethics, and even logic. Although the description of mokṣa contains elements which by definition have to be ineffable, a glimpse into its essential nature can be meaningful, in the final analysis, only in terms of the categories of our understanding, limited though they may be ultimately. The emphasis here is on experience (anubhava or bhoga) and not on description (lakṣaṇa). The pursuit of mokṣa, culminating in the experience of mokṣa, is explicitly, and by definition, a human experience because mokṣa is a puruṣārtha, a goal pursued by man. The condition of the possibility of the experience of mokṣa is presupposed in the description of it, and both experience and description imply a fundamental philosophical anthropology.

Indian schools of philosophy are notoriously divided on the issue of what constitutes the essential nature of man, evident in their descriptions of mokṣa. This is the case even where certain elements are common to many schools as, for example, the view that a description of the role of consciousness (cit) features prominently, if not chiefly, in a discussion on man's essential nature, and the view that epistemological issues are crucial to any philosophical anthropology. This situation makes evident the fertile ground around the problem concerning man where ideas and concepts are discussed with greater clarity and precision in the ongoing debates of the various schools.
logically, the later schools would seem to have been at an advantage insofar as an opportunity for a different perspective was provided in the face of constant criticism and debate. There was scope for an interpretation, or reinterpretation, of traditional views in the light of perspectives hitherto accepted. Śaiva Siddhānta is one such school which makes no apologies for drawing from, and building on, the 'pool' of ideas and concepts, whilst at the same time making evident its own unique position.  

In putting forward the Śaiva Siddhānta standpoint, the 'upholders' or 'protectors' (ācāryas) of the tradition follow the classical scholastic tradition of first assessing the viability of the 'other view' (pūrva-pakṣa)—be it an identifiable view of a particular school, or a hypothetical (albeit unacceptable) one which needs to be considered for clarity's sake—before arriving at their own established conclusion (siddhānta). Whilst this dialogic or dialectic approach is elaborately followed by upholders of the tradition, it features evidently in the Āgama texts which are regarded as the infallible and authoritative works of the Śaiva Siddhānta tradition. Thus, the method of arriving at the Siddhānta position presupposes an acquaintance with the basic standpoints of the 'other' views, through which the original contribution of the Siddhāntin becomes more striking.
1.3 The terminological framework supporting Śaiva Siddhānta
philosophical anthropology

Śaiva Siddhānta has an intricately worked out
doctrine of categories with a detailed description of their
nature and functions. The word for 'category' or
'principle' as the tradition uses it is tattva. It is
derived from the neuter pronominal base tad with the suffix
-tva, added to any noun base, to form the neuter abstract
substantive tattva (the rules for euphonic changes require
the "d" of tad to be replaced by "t"). Tattva means: 'true
or real state', 'truth', 'reality', 'a true principle'. The
synonym that is often used is padārtha, which literally
means 'the meaning' (artha) 'of a word' (pada), or 'that
which corresponds to the meaning of a word' and, therefore,
'a thing' or 'material object'. It is from these meanings
that the term is used to denote 'a category' or
'predicament'. The theory of tattvas or padārthas serves as
a framework, or catalogue, classifying in a broad way what
constitutes the basic vocabulary of any system's
philosophical perspective.30

1.3(a) The ontological categories

Śiddhānta talks of tattvas at two levels which, for
convenience' sake, may be referred to as the ontological and
cosmological levels. At one level the tattvas refer to what
stand for ultimate reality, where the tattvas signify what
has an ontological status, in the sense of being concerned
with the 'essence' of things or 'being' in the abstract, but no less real. At this level, three tattvas are spoken of: śivam, ātman, and mālam. Referring to Pāṇini's Uṇādisūtra, i, 153, Monier Williams gives the derivation of śiva from the verbal root śi which, together with an affix called krit in Sanskrit used to form a noun, means "in whom [or what] all things lie". śivam thus stands for a 'receptacle' or the substrate of ultimate reality constituted of the three tattvas. The implication of this meaning, from the Siddhāntin's point of view, is that without śivam the status of the other two tattvas has no basis. In other words, a discussion of ultimate reality as Śaiva Siddhānta postulates it, necessitates, in the final analysis, a consideration of all three tattvas for a proper understanding of the Śaiva Siddhānta perspective.

Without entering into the proofs for the existence of śivam—which ultimately are a vindication of the authority of Śaiva Siddhānta scripture—an attempt may be made to give an idea of this complicated concept by citing a few descriptions of it:

The reality is free from differentiation; it is knowledge, bliss, and non-dual. There are neither names nor forms for Śiva, the supreme self.

It is not known by perception, nor is it known by inference, nor is Śāṅkara's [śivam's] nature the object of verbal testimony.

...but śivam is declared as being difficult to be known [even] by these and other means of cognition.
Śiva-tattva [śivam], the peak of all paths, is spoken of thus: unknowable, indescribable, incomparable, stainless, subtle, omnipresent, eternal, firm, indestructible, majestic.  

In the Śiva-Āgamas Śiva is to be known as: [one] devoid of a beginning, a middle, and an end; naturally devoid of mala; sovereign, omniscient, and perfect.  

Whilst the essential nature of Śivam is inscrutable, ineffable and uncognizable—as evinced in the above quotations—it is nonetheless what can be known or, rather, experienced (as explicitly constituting the fact of mokṣa). This is evident in verse six of the Śivajñāna-bodham which arrives at this conclusion arguing in the following way:  

If it is not seen it is non-existent (asat), if it is seen it is insentient (jada). The wise ones declare that the nature (rupam) of Śambhu [śivam] is to be known differently from [knowing] these two [asat and jada].  

In his commentary on this verse Śivāgrayogin says: "...the wise ones who have the vision, experience [it]," and "experience" here has the deliberate overtones, for example, of 'the experience of joy'.  

An inherent component of the concept of Śivam, and one that is often used interchangeably with it, is śakti or śiva-śakti. This feminine gender word literally means things like 'power', 'strength', 'ability', and 'energy'. Śakti is the means by which Śivam is manifest and whilst, in one sense, the one can be distinguished from the other, the two together constitute one tattva at the ontological level. Śakti is thus coexistent with and part of the nature of
śivam. With regard to śakti being the means by which śivam is manifest, śakti is said to be an 'instrument' (karaṇa). This significant qualification serves as the basis for the view in Śaiva Siddhānta theology that the cosmological functions of creation, preservation, and destruction, attributed in the final analysis to śivam, are possible through śakti as the instrument:

This instrument can be none other than śakti itself; it cannot be unintelligent because it must be intelligent; though one, it appears as manifold in perception and activity, on account of the variety of objects.\[^{42}\]

The description of śivam as pure consciousness (cit) is useful for describing śakti as an abbreviation for cit-śakti, the power of consciousness which is inherent to consciousness itself. In this way consciousness can be seen as becoming manifest through a power which coexists with it:

"Verily, the cit-śakti which is inherent to śivam is only one;"\[^{43}\] and further: "This pure śakti of śivam is inherent to it; on account of its [śakti's] differentiated activity, it is said to be the body of Sadākhya."\[^{44}\] The significance and indispensability of cit-śakti are seen in the fact, as the Siddhāntin sees it, that: "The entire universe is maintained by it [cit-śakti] which, though one, has many forms."\[^{45}\]

Śakti plays a crucial role in Śaiva Siddhānta, especially since it is indispensable not only for its soteriological function, but for all activity as such. In
this sense it constitutes the essential feature of the atman (and therefore that of man), also described as being characterized by consciousness and, thereby, inherently possessing the power of consciousness. The discussion on the relationship between the power of consciousness of sivam (śiva-śakti) and that of the ātman (ātma-cit-śakti) will be dealt with later. Suffice it to say for the moment that in both cases consciousness expresses itself through a power which, as already seen, is one power but which is spoken of as being of three kinds: that of volition (icchā-śakti), of knowledge (jñāna-śakti), and of action or activity (kriyā-śakti). One can hardly over-emphasize the unique slant of the Śaiva Siddhānta perspective of considering the means or power of expression of consciousness within the definition of consciousness itself, especially since this position is a significant deviation from that of the Sāṅkhya, Yoga, and Advaita Vedānta views.

The concern with the categories of ātman and malam is the special subject matter of this study noting, of course, that sivam, via śakti, permeates every aspect of Siddhānta thought. Ātman and malam are the chief categories for the understanding of man in Śaiva Siddhānta. For reasons which should become clear in the course of the study, these categories go together, up to a point. Their separation marks the liberation of the ātman at which point malam, having become impotent, loses its influence over the
ātman. A few descriptions of these two categories may be cited at this stage for a basic understanding of the framework of Śaiva Siddhānta vocabulary.

The word ātman is variously translated as: 'essence', 'nature', 'character', 'the self' or 'the individual soul'. In all cases it constitutes the animating principle in man, identical with the reference to man as a sentient being, one endowed with the principle of consciousness. In this respect ātman shares with Śivam the essential nature of consciousness—together with the powers of consciousness manifest in volition, knowledge, and action—common to both. Whilst the essential nature of both is therefore identical, the tradition regards the relationship between them as one of an identity-in-difference (bheda-adheda).46

Insofar as the ātman is characterized by consciousness, a description of its essential nature is bound to include elements as difficult to grasp as that of Śivam's:

The supreme ātman is celebrated as: all-knowing, all-pervading, tranquil, the essence of all [beings], facing all directions, beyond the sense organs, self-supporting, very subtle, eternal, unchanging, entirely without parts, impossible to be made known adequately, all pervasive, constant, incomparable. When there is the manifestation of this light, the one abiding in it would obtain the state of Śivam.47

And further:

One should contemplate the ātman through the ātman; the abode of the ātman is verily in the
The significance for man, whose essential nature constitutes that of the ātman, is clear: "There exists no greater knowledge than that of the ātman. One should be intent on this knowledge of ātman; what the ātman is is the supreme." If the ātman is regarded as the essence of man, then the above descriptions of it as all-knowing, all-pervasive, etc., defy the need, as Śaiva Siddhānta sees it, for the realization of its eternal nature. This is a crucial problem and it may be said to be the basic issue in Siddhānta philosophical anthropology. Suffice it to say at this stage that the ātman is unable to manifest itself, and when it does so in man, its manifestation is a limited or fettered one. Moreover, since by definition—as the cited descriptions show—it cannot intrinsically limit or fetter itself, the cause for this state of the ātman must be said to be extrinsic to it. This point leads to a consideration of the third category of ultimate reality at the ontological level, viz., malam.

The word malam literally means: 'dirt', 'filth', 'dust or impurity' in both the physical and metaphysical senses. The arguments for the existence of malam as a constituent of ultimate reality—consisting of three irreducible, distinct and eternal categories—fall specifically within the problem of man in Śaiva Siddhānta.
Malam is associated only with ātman, which means that it is related to the essence of man. The Siddhāntin is careful not to consider Śivam with even the semblance of a trace of malam. These two categories are mutually exclusive in their essential natures—although both are parts of the threefold ontological structure of ultimate reality—with the former being characterized as light (prakāśa) and consciousness (cit), and the latter as darkness (tamas) and insentient (acit or ādā). 51

Malam is a restrictive agent which fetters the expression of ātman’s powers, evident in the limited knowledge that man possesses, though intrinsically all-knowing. The Pauṣkara Āgama argues this point in the following way:

The ātman is covered by malam, therefore, it has limited knowledge, although omniscient [intrinsically]; whoever is not one who has limited knowledge, is not restricted by malam—like Śiva; therefore, not being such a one, ātman is covered by malam. 52

Whereas Śaiva Siddhānta scripture is the final authority as regards the view of the threefold structure of ultimate reality, there can be no contradiction in arguing, particularly with reference to malam, that its existence is derived from the analysis of the human predicament. It is man’s finitude, limitedness, and involvement in the throes of the oscillation between experiences of joy and suffering—alien to man’s essential nature when it can manifest itself fully, once it is liberated from these factors—that point to
a cause for this predicament. For the Siddhāntin this cause is *malam* and, ironically, it is this condition— that of the subjection to its influence— which should lead to the need to overcome it, culminating in the expression of ātman's essential nature. A more detailed discussion of these points will have to be postponed until the constitution of man, as seen from the Śaiva Siddhānta perspective, is more closely analysed. What is being attempted for the moment, is to provide the framework indispensable for the treatment of man in Śaiva Siddhānta and the place of *malam* in this framework.

Siddhānta speaks of three kinds of *malam*, viz., ānava, karman, and mayā. When only the word *malam* is used, it usually refers to the first of these, ānava-malam. The adjective ānava is derived from the word *ānu* which means: 'fine', 'minute', 'atomic'. It is spoken of as the primordial or original *malam* because ātman is "born with" it (sahaja). It is an adjunct which confines the all-knowing and all-pervasiveness of ātman. It is what makes the ātman 'minute', it makes it an *ānu*, which means that the ātman becomes limited, restricted, and fettered. Ānava-malam is said to completely enshroud the ātman, offering it no scope at all for the manifestation and expression of its powers of volition, knowledge, and action. The ātman is thus isolated. It is at this point that karma-malam and mayā-malam—said to be adventitious or consequential (āgantuka)—
-offer the ātman's powers a modicum of manifestation and limited operation. These two kinds of malam will be dealt with later in greater detail. What is to be noted is that without them, the ātman, and therefore man, is in a forlorn and helpless state.

What has been attempted thus far is an introduction to Śaiva Siddhānta vocabulary as a background to the discussion on man. In dealing with the categories (tattvas), the ontological level at which they may be referred to was first considered, viz., as śivam, ātman, and malam. Within this level, three more categories have to be referred to. One way to derive them would be to bear in mind the role of malam. It was said that it shrouds the ātman and thereby fetters it. In other words, malam is a bond, a shackle, which holds the ātman captive, as it were, restraining and confining it. It is in this context that malam is referred to as pāśam which literally means: a 'noose', 'chain', or 'fetter'. With its limiting effect on the ātman, the ātman becomes a paśu, a bound entity. It is not incidental that the literal meaning of paśu as a 'tethered animal' refers to the plight or predicament of the ātman. Extending the metaphor of the ātman having become a paśu or animal, one can speak of a lord or pati—which would be an abbreviation for paśu-pati, the lord of animals. Thus the status of a lord is attributed to pati who is said to 'take care' of the paśus. It is in this role as pati that
śivam operates—through śakti—as the agent (kartri) of the cosmological functions of creation, preservation, and destruction. It is pati who takes pity over the plight of pasu under the spell of ānava-malam and aids the ātman in breaking the shackles of malam which is done, ironically, by pati instigating the operation of karma-malam and māyā-malam—with which or through which, the ātman is given the opportunity to wreak its liberation.

1.3 (b) The cosmological categories

The second level at which Śaiva Siddhānta categories (tattvas) may be discussed is what was referred to as the cosmological level, which applies with specific reference to the 36 categories derived from māyā (-malam). It may be repeated that māyā is one of the three kinds of malam—the other two being ānava and karman—and that it is from this aspect of the ontological category of malam that the 36 categories, beginning with pure sound (nāda) and ending with the category 'earth' (prithivi), are derived at what may be called the cosmological level. At this level the gross manifestation of 'matter' as earth, is ultimately derived from the abstract category of pure sound, which in turn is derived from 'pure matter' (māyā) which is an aspect of what constitutes a fetter (pāśa) and which, further, is ultimately a pseudonym for the ontologically limiting adjunct, viz., malam. The crucial point with reference to
the 36 categories, as will be seen, is that each one is
prescribed a specific role or function and it is with such
categories as the intellect, the ego, and the sense organs,
that their relevance for man is vital. Indeed, whilst these
specific categories pertain especially to man, their
significance has to be seen in the framework of the
ontological categories of ultimate reality, in which the
essence of man, the ātman, occupies a central position.

Before dealing with the 36 principles or
categories (tattvas) which are derived from, and said to be
the 'evolutes' of māyā, a few preliminary remarks may be
made in attempting to unravel the intricate and complicated
doctrine of Śaiva Siddhānta categories. Māyā is the basic
stuff which constitutes the sphere in which, and through
which, man's experiences in the world take place. Māyā, it
must be remembered, is one kind of malam and is therefore
insentient. In simple terms, it may be referred to as
'matter' which, of its own accord, is unable to cause any
effect. It needs a motivating sentient agent which
instigates and sets into motion an evolutionary process by
instilling or infusing it with a dynamism intrinsically
alien to it.53 This agent is sakti, the power of
consciousness inherent to Śivam and is itself characterized
essentially as consciousness. As pure matter, māyā is an
abstract category arrived at, in the final analysis, through
a reflection on man's empirical experience of it. The
'ascent' to pure matter from the experience of the world and the 'descent' from pure matter to the concrete world constitute a reflective analysis which, on the one hand, represents the condition of the possibility of realizing the essential natures of the three ontological categories of ultimate reality, viz., śivam, ātman, and malam and, on the other hand, accounts for man's common, everyday experiences.

It is to be noted that it is only the ātman—the essential nature of man—which is in the unique position of being able to distinguish the difference between the other two categories of ultimate reality. This special feature should emerge in greater detail and with a stronger impact at each stage of this study. What is to be noted at present is the implication of the Siddhānta view that the ātman is in the unique position of 'directing its attention' both on śivam and malam. In one sense this is a logical conclusion. It was already stated that śivam and malam are exclusive categories with absolutely no relation between them. Therefore, it can only be the ātman which can experience both, chiefly (as will be further explained) on account of 'sharing' the natures of both: as a sentient being, the essence of the ātman is characterized by consciousness, which it shares with śivam; and as a being involved in worldly experience, it partakes of the objects of experience which are of the insentient nature of malam. In dealing with the categories, we are concerned precisely with the
latter. The doctrine of the 36 categories constitutes the universe of our experience, the 'theatre' of man's life in the world, the indispensable sphere in which not only does man's nature have a scope for expression but also one which can bring about the awareness of its (ātman's) unique position which, as will be seen, constitutes self-knowledge, i.e., ātman's knowledge of itself.

Māyā alone is insufficient to account for the varied experiences of life in the world which the ātman undergoes. The involvement in experiences is more intricate for the Siddhāntin than a mere account of the principles which make up human experience. Life in the world is fraught with inconsistencies and apparently absurd situations. This reality too has to be taken into account and so a complementary principle needs to be acknowledged. Thus, māyā and karman operate together and make possible man's life in the world. The definition of māyā, therefore is:

It is one, it is inauspicious, it is the seed of the universe, and is possessed of diverse powers. It is indestructible, all pervasive, and one which is a hindrance until the cessation of the authority of its cooperator [karman].

This quotation brings out the restrictive power that māyā, as a kind of malam, has over the ātman. It also points out the efficacy of its power as being dependent on the operation of karman. Whilst māyā (with karman, which will be dealt with in the next section) is a restrictive power--
which means that it hinders the full expression of the 
ātman's nature--this power turns out to be beneficent in
relation to the overwhelming capacity of ānava-malam which
offers the ātman no scope at all for expression and
manifestation. The eternal status of māyā referred to in
the last quotation is described in the following way:

At the time of the destruction of the universe the
products which have it [māyā] as the substratum
are in the form of [latent] power. At the time of
[māyā's] transformation the manifested forms are
employed for the fulfillment (siddhaye) of [their]
purposes.55

The inferential argument which establishes the
existence of the category of māyā is similar to that which
accounts for the category of śivam. Just as the existence
of the universe as a created product points to an agent
responsible for it, so too the objects of the universe point
to some basic stuff out of which they evolve. The argument
runs thus:

For the same reason that an agent is inferred
through the nature of the universe [viz., that it
is a product and, hence, requires an agent
responsible for it], there is also a material
cause [of the universe]; without threads there can
be no piece of cloth.56

One more significant description of māyā may be
cited here by way of justifying the need to postulate such a
category which offers man a scope for experience in the
world (through which a limited expression and manifestation
of the ātman becomes evident). The following quotation, in
the form of rhetorical questions, refers to the description
of it, already given above, as being indestructible and ubiquitous:

If it were non-eternal whence is produced this product [universe] again? If it were not all-pervasive how would it be everywhere amongst all?57

This description of māyā obviates the problem of accounting for the material cause of the universe in each phase of the recurrent cycle of creation, preservation, and destruction. It also describes the Śaiva Siddhānta position as a realist one. Māyā is a category that has a real status and man's experience of it as the substrate of the things in the world is not illusive, as is the case with the objects of dream experience. As the material cause of the universe it has an eternal status which it retains even in the so-called phase of destruction where it exists in a potential form:

That wherein the universe is contained at the time sleep [destruction] and having been created proceeds forth, is that by which it is called, māyā; it is said to be that by the great preceptors.58

In postulating this category at the very outset of its systematic account of what constitutes human experience, Śaiva Siddhānta avoids an infinite regress as regards the material cause of the universe. If māyā were not ultimately real and thus annihilated at the time of destruction, some material cause would have to be postulated when creation takes place again. In other words, if there were an origin of māyā an explanation would have to be given to account for
this origin. Then an explanation for the source of this origin would be necessary, and so on. This problem is obviated by saying that mayā is unoriginated and, thus, can have no end, or that it has an origin that is beginningless (anādi). This is a euphemistic way of saying that it is beyond human capacity to conceive of the ultimate status of mayā, not only because all the categories of our understanding and experience are through the very evolutes of mayā, but also because--at least theoretically--one would have to step out of the framework of mayā in order to grasp its reality.

By saying that the knowledge of the ultimate status of mayā is beyond human capacity to have such knowledge, what is implied is that such a knowledge is impossible through mayā itself. Insofar as the condition of the possibility of liberation from all fetters, including that of mayā, is presupposed in the theory of mokṣa, a knowledge of ultimate reality is in fact tacitly accepted. For man in the world, this condition is possible, finally, only through mayā. That is to say that mayā is the fetter through which the ātman finally becomes fetterless. Mayā is a ladder, as it were, which has to be discarded when its purpose is served. The hierarchy of the 36 categories of mayā are the rungs which, step by step through a transcendental reflection on them, forge the rift between what constitutes the essence of mayā as a kind of malam, and
the essence of man (i.e., the atman) which is the animate factor in all human experience--albeit limited by the strictures of mayā. It will be seen that mayā cannot provide the authentic means of what constitutes knowledge. It undoubtedly constitutes the medium through which man undergoes experience in the world and through which, among other things, cognition takes place. However, knowledge as such, i.e., knowledge of what is ultimately real, is through a means other than that of mayā, viz., cit-sakti.

In the light of what has been said above one can speak of the soteriological function of the doctrine of the 36 tattvas. This will be dealt with in more detail at a later stage. What is being attempted here is an explanation of the constituents of human experience, in which context it has to be constantly borne in mind that these constituents are insentient by nature. They are the tattvas which are derived from mayā, a kind of malam, and they share naturally the basic insentience characteristic of malam. Mayā appears as if it bears manifold powers but power as such (sakti) is, firstly, an inextricable component of śivam--which is the instrument responsible for creation, preservation, and destruction on śivam's behalf--and, secondly, sakti is a component also of the ātman. In other words, śivam and ātman are the only sentient categories of the threefold structure of ultimate reality and any manifestation of
consciousness is possible, in the final analysis, only through either of these two principles. In the present context we are concerned with the essence of man, the ātman, in its relation to māyā which makes up the features of human experience. It is the ātman, characterized by consciousness, which has at its disposal the convenience of the categories which constitute man's experience in the world, and not vice versa. In the reflective analysis of the significance and functions of the 36 tattvas, the tattvas are to be seen as intended chiefly for providing a scope for ātman's experiences through which (experiences) it comes to realize its own nature.59

The way in which man's essential nature--the ātman characterized as consciousness--can be realized is by coming to grips with what constitutes man's experiences in the world. This process is identical, firstly, with the analysis of the categories through which an understanding of the role of māyā is provided and, secondly, with the reflective analysis which leads to a knowledge, or experience, of the difference between the natures of both māyā--as a kind of malam--and the ātman. At this stage we are concerned with the former which pertains more specifically to man's state in the world. It is not necessary to enter into a detailed description of each category of māyā individually since their specific significance for man would be lost without seeing them in
the context, e.g., of the states of consciousness—the states which the ātman undergoes (ātma-avasthās)—and the role of the ātman as it features in man as a knowing, cognizing being, i.e., the epistemological role of the categories in making possible man's experience in the world. (It is in this context, further, that the soteriological function of the categories would become more meaningful with reference to man.) Suffice it for the present to give a broad and general classification of the 36 categories. Several of these categories are not adequately translatable into English by a single word and so the Sanskrit original is retained.

It was said that māyā is (together with karman, to be considered in the next section) one of the two adventitious or consequential (āgantuka) malam and as a malam it is said to have a beginningless origin—and in this sense it can be spoken of as being unoriginated. Its function and role (together with karman) are necessitated as a kind of antidote to counteract the overwhelming influence of āpava-malam on the ātman's powers of expression and manifestation. Māyā is an unconscious entity and is the stuff out of which the objects of man's experiences come to be and through which man experiences them. This means that māyā cannot act on its own but that it has to be 'acted upon' by a conscious principle. The ātman is incapable of doing this because of the 'power' of āpava-malam over it.
and, hence, it is only śivam, the conscious principle par excellence, which can 'act on' māyā—through which (together with karman) the ātman is given the possibility to express its powers of volition, knowledge, and action. Śivam does not perform this gracious act 'directly' but wills it through the intrinsic power (śakti) for the sake of the ātman. In this context, śivam may be referred to as pāti who 'takes pity' over the ātman which has become an ānu or a paśu on account of ānava-malam. Thus, śivam condescends, as it were, to 'rescue' the ātman through śakti and every role of śivam has to be put in the hands of śakti as the instrument of śivam. Therefore, the operation of māyā is possible only through the power of instigation provided by the śakti of śivam.

Whilst it is usual to speak of the evolutes of māyā—the 36 categories—as evolving out of itself, such a description is a contradiction in terms because, as is evident from what has just been said, māyā is incapable of evolving without śakti. One could attempt to understand the origin of the categories instigated by śakti in the following way: firstly, śakti initiates what may be described as a chain reaction, with the result that those categories which initially evolve out of māyā show evidence of śakti's role more directly by being 'closer' to the original stuff out of which they emerge, at the incitation of śakti; secondly, and consequently, the evidence of śakti
can be said to be progressively 'blurred' in the evolution of the grosser categories which evidently constitute the stuff of man's everyday experience in the world. Thus, the categories have a dynamism which is not their own intrinsically, and to this may be added the point that in the order of the discovery and knowledge of the categories in the Śaiva Siddhānta scheme, man proceeds from the latter to the former, i.e., from the gross manifestations of māyā, such as the objects of the world, to the subtle ones such as pure sound.60 In this process man's essential, conscious nature, characterized as the atman, becomes evident by contrast with the stuff which makes possible its limited expression and for whose dispensation it is ultimately intended.61

Śaiva Siddhānta speaks of the evolutes or categories of māyā in three groups or levels corresponding to the degrees to which sakti becomes evident. These are called: the 'pure' or 'unmixed' (śuddha) māyā; māyā as both 'pure' and 'impure', or mixed, (śuddha-asuddha-māyā); and the realm of 'impure' (asuddha) māyā. They correspond respectively to: the inciting, instigating or directing group (prerakakhanda); the group which generates human experience (bhojyatri-khanda); and the group which constitutes the objects to be experienced by the atman (bhogyakhaṇḍa).62 This grouping also corresponds to the classification of the categories of māyā respectively as the five śiva-tattvas,
the seven *vidyā-tattvas*, and the twenty-four *ātma-tattvas*. It will be seen how this grouping refers more directly to the functions and roles of the categories within each group.

The five *śiva-tattvas* which make up the first group emerge, at the instigation of *sakti*, out of pure (*suddha*) māyā, which is also called bindu and kundalinī.63 These are called: *nāda* (sound) or *śiva-tattva*64; *bindu* or *śakti-tattva*; *sādākhya*; *mahēśvara*; and *śuddha-vidyā* (pure knowledge).65 What is to be noted about the *śiva-tattvas* which constitute the initial transition towards creation as such, is that the evolution of these five categories "must be understood as evolution not in the sense of transformation (pariṣāma) but in the sense only of changes of states (vṛttī) of one self-identical material cause."66 A detailed assessment of this transcendental realm is not of immediate significance regarding the concern with man in the world. The function of this realm is crucial for those ātmans which have reached this stage having surpassed the limitations of time and the effects of *karman*. Time is a category that emerges via *nāda* and it falls within the next realm of categories; and *karman*, the mechanics of which are inoperative without the factor of time (as will be seen), is closely related or mixed with the realm in which time is manifest.

The modification (*vṛttī*) of sound (*nāda*) constitutes the material cause of all the succeeding
categories. The initial modification is given a general name and is called both pure and impure or mixed (śuddha-asuddha) māyā, or simply mixed or impure māyā. It is referred to as both pure and mixed because it evolves out of the pure realm and at the same time cooperates, or is mixed, with kārma in this 'lower' realm; and it is simply called impure or mixed because it is more directly related to the 'grosser' categories. Its synonym, mohinī, which literally means 'deluding', 'confusing', 'perplexing', and 'illusive', conveys the manner in which it functions, and contrasts it with the pure realm from which it emerges. The difference in the nomenclature brings out the difference in the functions of the two realms: śuddha-māyā is the pure or unmixed realm in which are grouped the activating, inciting, or directing (preraka) tattvas; asuddha-māyā is the substratum of the categories which fall within the impure or mixed realm and which are directed (pretya) tattvas. By definition, then, the relation between the two "is of one-sided dependence pointing to the nature of the distinction between the two as one of levels." Further, it would seem that the pure realm must function with 'all the purity' characteristic of its nature and it is perplexing that it should be responsible for what deludes or confuses. In principle it has to be granted that the pure realm can function only in a 'pure way' and in accordance with its nature. However, the realm which it controls is under the
influence of other factors which have an apparently
contradictory consequence. In this realm, the factor of
_karman_ (and _ānava-malam_ which always lingers in the
background of the _ātman's_ expression in the world) has a
decisive role which functions with reference to a specific
_ātman_ and is thus a variable factor, but nonetheless common
to all _ātmans_ in the world, as will be seen. It is due
chiefly to the adjunct of _karman_ that this realm is called a
mixed or impure realm.

It must be remembered that _māyā_ (and also _karman_) is
intended for the _ātman_ which is possessed by, and under the
spell of _ānava-malam_. With its powers of consciousness--
expressed in volition, knowledge, and action--under
captivity, as it were, the _ātman_ is incapable of undergoing
any experience at all and, thereby, manifesting its nature.
With the introduction of _māyā_ (and _karman_) an opportunity
for even a partial expression of its powers is provided.
Put in metaphorical language, the stage is being gradually
set to offer a modicum of scope for the _ātman_ to undergo
experience. With the _vidyā-tattvas_ of _māyā_ the basic
ingredients of experience emerge and the _ātman_ is invested
or conjoined with them. There are five factors which
constitute the props of _ātman's_ experience in the world, in
all its different states of consciousness, and which are
retained by the _ātman_ throughout its transmigratory
existences--which occur as a consequence of the operation of
karman. They are called the five kañcukas which make up the 'dress', 'vesture', or 'covering' which make the ātman 'ready' or 'set' for existence in the world. These are: kāla (time); niyati (the principle of determination, destiny, or necessity which operates particularly in collusion with karman); kalā (literally 'particle' and stands for the important category out of which evolves the rest of the categories in the entire scheme); vidyā (the category responsible for knowledge); and rāga (the category responsible for attraction, feeling, or passion pertaining to the objects of experience). With these rigid supports -- which structurally do not form part of the essential, intrinsic nature of what they support, viz., the ātman--the ātman is prepared to partake of life in the world, through which, in fact, the intended realization of its own nature should take place.

From the aggregation of the above five categories emerges the puruṣa-tattva (also called puṁs-tattva) which permits the designation of the ātman literally as 'man' (puruṣa or puṁs), the agent of experience in the world, which functions with the aid of the other categories which constitute the instruments of experience. Identical with the emergence of the puruṣa-tattva is the factor of life-breath prāṇa) -- in this context the word 'jīva', which means 'living', is a synonym for puruṣa because of the principle of prāṇa--which is not given a place in the scheme of the 36
categories but which is assumed and, as will be seen, is a
decisive factor in distinguishing the fourth state of
consciousness (turīya) from that beyond it (turīyatīta).
This needs to be mentioned here in anticipation since the
term is presupposed in the discussion concerning the states
of wakefulness, dream, etc. With the puruṣa-tattva the
ātman is now prepared for the objects of experience which,
in the scheme of the categories, belong to the next realm.

The first category in the group known as the ātma-
tattvas is āsuddha-māyā which, for different reasons, is
variously called mūla-prakṛiti (or simply prakṛiti-tattva,
the material cause of the empirical world), guṇa-tattva, or
citta-tattva. This category is a modification of the
kalā-tattva mentioned above which emerges out of mohini
which, in turn, is a modification of bindu (śuddha-māyā) via
nāda. It is called āśuddha (impure or mixed) by extension
of the similar terminology used for mohini (i.e., śuddha-
āśuddha-māyā, which is also referred to simply as āśuddha-
māyā) and also because it is more directly responsible for
the 'grosser' manifestations of matter. It is in this sense
that it is known as prakṛiti-tattva, the primitive, material
category which is responsible for the evolutes which become
the objects of the ātman's experience in the world. The
modification of prakṛiti-tattva is guṇa-tattva and although
this category is not given a separate status in the scheme
(as is the case with prāṇa) for all practical purposes it
has to be seen as an evolute of prakṛiti-tattva when the gunas are "in unmanifest balance." The guna-tattva is a compound category which is responsible for the evolution of the three gunas. The word 'guna' means 'quality', 'attribute', or 'property' and are of the three kinds adopted from the Sāṅkhya school, viz., sattva, rajas, and tamas. They are representative of the physical and psychological qualities respectively of: calmness or tranquillity; of activity or agitation; and of lethargy or dullness. Insofar as the guna-tattva is the collective term for these qualities and insofar as, in the order of its functions, it is related specifically to man's psychological make up, guna-tattva can be understood as citta, the psyche of man. The guna-tattva occupies a crucial position in providing the transition from the group of vidyā-tattvas (via the kalā-tattva and the prakṛiti-tattva) to that of the ātma-tattvas—just as the category called suddha-aśuddha-māyā provides the crucial transition from the śiva-tattvas to the vidyā-tattvas.

When the gunas are in a state of equilibrium they are unmanifest. The process of the evolution of the categories is possible only when the balance is upset and it is here particularly that the role of the directing or instigating (preraka) tattvas is indispensable. When the sattva-guna is incited to take predominance, the sequence of the evolutes continues with the 'origin' of the buddhi-
tattva, the principle of 'intellect' which plays the role of the judge, the determinator, or decision maker with regard to the nature of the object of experience. This principle will be dealt with in more detail since it permeates all facets of experience in the dream and wakeful states. What is to be noted especially is its nature, which it shares with all the other categories, as a material and insentient entity (jāda or acīt), but which is nonetheless, indispensable for man's empirical experience. Closely associated with it, and operating in collusion with it, is its evolute called āhākāra which literally means the 'I-maker' but usually is translated as the ego. It is the outcome of the predominance of rajas over the other two gunas, viz., sattva and tamas. This category is a logical outcome of the function of determination attributed to the intellect by pointing to a subject which in fact determines, and which is evident in the role of the "I" or the ego tacit in all human attributes. It is therefore the factor of subjectiveness and it is not surprising that the operation of life-breath itself (prāṇa or vāyu) is dependent on the āhākāra-tattva. 72

The predominance of one or the other guna which gives rise to, or is responsible for, a particular category—for example, the intellect arising through the predominance of the sattva-guna and the ego out of rajas—means that the remaining two gunas (including tamas as the third) are not
absent, but only that they are subordinate to it. This is particularly evident in the sequence of the categories evolving from the ahāṅkāra-tattva, differentiated into its three aspects or qualities (guṇas) as sattva, rajas, and tamas. For the purposes of the functions and types of products evolving from these qualities, the following description applies: sattva is called taijasa because of its illuminating capacity; rajas is called vaikārika because of its ability to change and thereby being responsible for activity; and tamas is called bhūtādi because it is the principle from which the elements (bhūtas) such as earth, etc., evolve.73

From the sattva quality distinguished as taijasa, evolves the manas-tattva, the category generally translated as the mind. Together with ahāṅkāra and buddhi, manas constitutes what are called the internal organs (antabhākarāṇas), all of which together may be referred to as what make up the citta or psyche of man. Manas is the mediating factor between buddhi and both the motor and sense organs which are stimulated by the objects of experience. It is manas which, in fact, directs these organs towards worldly experience. In this context, it will be seen how the manas is responsible for, or the cause both of certitude (sāṅkalpa) and doubt (vikalpa), and also that it operates in conjunction with only one sense organ at a time.74

From the sattva (or taijasa) quality of ahāṅkāra
evolve, in addition to the manas-tattva, the five organs or faculties of sense (jñānendriyas), viz., those of hearing (śrotra), touch (tvak), sight (cakṣus), taste (rasana) and smell (ghṛāna). From the rajas (or vaikārika) aspect of ahaṅkāra emerge the five motor organs (karmendriyas), viz., the mouth for speech (vāc), hands (pāṇi), feet (pāda), anus (pāyu), and the genitals (upastha). From the tamas (or bhūtādi) quality of the ahaṅkāra-tattva evolve two sets of categories distinguished as subtle elements (tanmātras) and gross elements (bhūtas). Each group consists of five categories each. The subtle elements are the relative counterparts of the five sense organs enumerated above, and are related to particular things which possess certain elements, viz., those of sound (śabda), touchability (sparśa), form (rūpa, which makes sight possible), tastability (rasa), and smell (gandha). These subtle elements are the features of the five gross elements (bhūtas) which are characterized by a particular subtle element. Thus, sound is the characteristic feature of the element called ether (ākāśa), touchability of air (vāyu), form of fire (tejas), tastability of water (āpa), and smell of the element earth (prithivi).

This concludes the brief survey of the 36 categories in Śaiva Siddhānta which constitute the terminological framework supporting the philosophical anthropology of the school. Reference will be made to these categories
frequently in this study and their survey is intended to provide the basic orientation toward the understanding of man in Śaiva Siddhānta. This orientation will not be complete without some remarks concerning the intriguing theory of karman which is woven into the philosophical perspective of Śaiva Siddhānta, as is the case with several schools of Indian thought.

1.4 Karman in Śaiva Siddhānta

From what has been said so far some aspects of the theory of karman which are basic to Śaiva Siddhānta have already been alluded to: that karman, like māyā, is a kind of malam and, as such and by definition, operates as a fetter (pāśa); that it shares with māyā the status of being a consequential or adventitious (āgantuka) malam; that it also shares with māyā the nature of what is insentient or non-conscious (jaqa or acit); that whatever 'power' (śakti) may be ascribed to karman--as with māyā--must ultimately have its source in the śakti which is inalienably that of Śivam; and that, consequently, the ultimate purpose of karman--together with māyā--is a beneficent one, relative to the malevolent āpava-malam associated with the ātman. These features, and several others to be dealt with presently in their application to the human situation, constitute a systematic attempt toward an understanding of man in Śaiva Siddhānta.
It was said that Śaiva Siddhānta philosophical anthropology is not a mere classification of the ingredients of human experience, but that it included other dimensions for which the theory of māyā alone can offer no reasonable answers. Māyā and its evolutes have specific, fixed functions which prevail in every case of their operations. According to the theory they do not deviate from their prescribed roles and whilst, as already pointed out, they constitute the principles of human experience, they cannot be said to be responsible for the obvious variety, change and multi-dimensionality of life in the world. By definition, māyā and its evolutes are not open to these facets which are a fact of experience. The Śaiva Siddhānta account which accommodates this variety and change of life in the world involves the operation of the principle of karman.

The theory of karman in Śaiva Siddhānta is a highly sophisticated and intricately worked out doctrine built into the metaphysical presuppositions of the school. Although there are several features which are common to all schools which accept the theory—karman being part of the 'pool of ideas' that practically all schools in India draw from (with the notable exception of the Cārvāka school)—there is, as will be seen, a peculiarly Siddhānta stamp to this school's version of the theory. Its unique interpretation and contribution will be evident bearing in mind the significant
position that karman occupies in the system as a whole, and particularly insofar as it is directly concerned with the human situation.

Etymologically the word is derived from the root kri which means, among other things, 'to do', 'to make', 'to perform', 'to accomplish', 'to cause', 'to effect', 'to prepare', and 'to undertake'. The neuter word karman thus means 'an act' or 'action', also in the sense of referring to a religious act or rite such as a sacrifice or oblation "especially as originating in the hope of future recompense." The general significance of these meanings for the theory as it has survived in Indian thought may be said to be based on the meaning of the root from which the word is derived, viz., to cause or to effect. By extension, therefore, karman signifies that everything in the world, both physical and moral, presupposes a cause, or that a cause is in fact an effect, or that every cause must produce an evident effect at some time. The theory may be intelligible, if not adequate, to explain physical phenomena, but may be questionable in the sphere of ethics or morality, as can be applicable only to man. For the Indian thinkers, the question seems to present no problems on the basic principle that every act, decision, attitude or behaviour must lead to some result or effect. The ramifications of this point will be dealt with shortly. What is to be noted at the outset is that whilst this view
can lead to a trivialization of the theory of karman, apart from providing scope for fatalism, it has a more significant dimension which has made it a philosophical issue—insofar as it pertains to the nature of man as expressed in the world. In this sense karman is a theory that attempts to furnish a descriptive, rational explanation of the variety, change, and apparent inconsistencies of life in the world.

The origins of the theory are not very clear and although the theory "is not distinctly mentioned before the age of the Upanishads...all are agreed that it had come to form an integral part of Indian thought before the close of the Vedic period."77 The earliest and very remote reference to anything resembling the rudiments of karman may therefore be said to be found in the Rigveda itself (4,27,1) as quoted in the Aitareya-upaniṣad (2,4).78 It is beyond the scope of this study to deal with an analysis of the karman theory and its development in the literary history of India. Suffice it to say that it is traceable to the earliest recorded literature from which it has been moulded in diverse facets including views on transmigration, morality, and the effects of deeds performed by man—all of which point to karman being a principle of causation. It is a notable feature of the theory that it has been closely woven into the fabric of philosophical thinking in India for centuries, so much so that it appears to be taken for granted by many schools as being a fact of life and inextricably associated
particularly with the human situation, and in this context more specifically as a principle or law of moral causation.

Put simply, the karman theory, as it has survived through the ages, is based on the view that the present state of man in the world derives from previous causes and that, consequently, what happens or is done now determines future events and situations. Whilst this theory applies universally, the special interest in it for the purposes of this study is its application and relevance to man especially insofar as it relates to the problem of 'freedom' and 'determination'. What karman refers to in this context is that every deed or action leaves behind its traces (saṃskāras) which are like seeds that 'bear fruit' at the appropriate time and place. The two senses in which the word karman is used here are not only man's deeds or actions but also the accumulation in seminal form of their impressions—as a seminal principle karman in the second sense is thus pregnant with consequences, i.e., it is generative of conditions which lead to the maturation or fruition of certain effects caused by, and as a consequence of, past actions. The agricultural metaphor is the one most commonly employed to explain the mechanics or operation of the theory of karman. Just as the natural law is responsible for a seed to bear fruit when the necessary environmental conditions are satisfied, so too the law of karman is responsible for the situation in which the
'fruits' of man's deeds are reaped under the appropriate conditions--the appropriate conditions being determined by the previous deeds.

The question of the perspective from which a theory such as that of karman is to be approached is philosophically relevant. To begin with a mere abstract necessity of a theory, or to merely follow a tradition of its application, and then to justify its relevance and applicability to the human situation could lead, philosophically speaking, to questions regarding the very postulation of the theory in the first place. On the other hand, to arrive at a theory--such as that of karman--on the basis of a reflection on the phenomena of experience is to attempt a credible and intelligible account of the need to postulate such a theory. In other words, to say on the basis of a reflective analysis of the diversity, variety, and apparent absurdity in the world, that some causal principle needs to be acknowledged--even if only theoretically at the outset--since every effect or product has a cause, is to approach the theory realistically.79 Rejecting from this perspective the view that the principle of causation can be one of chance or fortuitous coincidence, Śaiva Siddhānta adopts within the framework of its own metaphysical presuppositions, the generally accepted principle of karman which plays a crucial role in this school's systematic account of the categories of experience.
Just as *māyā* was seen to be a category arrived at through a reflection on the nature of man's experience, *karma* too is to be seen as being based on a reflection of man's status in the world and a search for its causal factor. The fact of being in a world where man's experience is reducible to the recurrent oscillation between the polarities of joy and suffering, or pleasure and pain, or happiness and unhappiness, points to a cause for which, in the final analysis, man has to be held responsible.\(^8^0\) This responsibility brings out the dialectical relation between the 'freedom' and 'determination' mentioned above: the freedom is entailed in the choice to do one thing or another, and the determination entails the fact of being in a condition to have to choose—put in contemporary terminology, this entails 'the being condemned to choose' (even if one chooses not to choose). Just as the merit of discussions about man's choice situations can be trivialized by reducing them to trite truisms, so too can the merit of the descriptive theory of *karma* as a causal factor of the human situation be underestimated and undermined. The implications of the freedom-determination dialectic have to be postponed until other features of the understanding of man in *Śaiva Siddhānta* are dealt with. What is to be noted is that the theory is an integral part of the philosophical anthropology of the school and one which, together with *māyā*, plays a significant role in *Śaiva Siddhānta*
soteriology.

A clear statement about the position, nature and function of karman in Šaiva Siddhānta is:

Thus, operating between [suddha-aśuddha] māyā and kāla [tattvas] karman has no beginning; though manifesting [atman's powers], it is an obstructing [factor]—as long as it is present there is no [progress to] liberation.\(^81\)

This description of karman shows that it shares not only the beginningless nature of māyā, but also its beneficent role in offering the ātman a scope for expression and manifestation of its powers of consciousness. Whilst this role is indispensable both, nonetheless, operate as fetters (pāśam) to the ātman's essential nature expressed and manifested fully only in the state of mokṣa or mukti. In other words, karman too—as with māyā—has to be 'discarded' no sooner its role has been played. In a sense, the nature and role of karman are more complicated than those of māyā: the nature of māyā as insentient and the role it plays through its various evolutes are clearly defined and related to man's concrete experience; karman, on the other hand, though insentient as well, does not evolve (but is of three kinds, as will be seen) and its role in relation to man has to be inferred on the basis of a reflective analysis of the human condition. In other words, karman cannot be 'seen' as is the case with some evolutes of māyā (e.g., earth and water). Karman is an 'unseen' (adriṣṭa) principle\(^82\) no less 'real' than māyā, insofar as karman is the principle of
causation. This is to say that whilst karman itself is humanly imperceivable—as indeed many subtle forms of maya are—its effects are within human experience as, e.g., with the variety of experiences that may be termed pleasant or unpleasant in life with karman as its cause. Further, precisely when and under what conditions the effects of deeds would be realized are not clearly defined, nor can they be verified.

In the attempt to rationalize the cause of the human situation embodied in the karman theory, karman pertains to acts or deeds performed by man which not only perpetuate the human condition, but also pertains to these very acts which are described as being advantageous, beneficial or favourable (hitam) and their opposites (ahitam). These acts in turn are described as being responsible respectively for merit (punyam) and demerit (papam). At least two points are underscored here. Firstly, the point that karman perpetuates the human condition implies its efficacy in all the three dimensions of time, i.e., the present state of man has its cause in the past, and what is done now logically points to some effect in the future. What these effects will be, and what causes are due to the present state, and when precisely the effects of present deeds and acts will manifest themselves or bear fruit, are beyond the limited scope of man to grasp. What is possible, however, is the understanding of the principle of karman which rests on the
theory of cause and effect, and that karman operates as a law. It is to be remembered that karman is an insentient principle and its operation therefore presupposes a conscious agent which has to set it in 'motion'—as seen also in the case of māyā. This agent is sakti, inalienably a part of śivam and acting as an instrument of śivam. Thus, as seen with māyā, sakti instills a dynamism intrinsically alien to the nature of karman, and together māyā and karman become associated with man for all times. Secondly, and associated with the first point, is the view that man's deeds and actions carry with them a code of conduct, or moral behaviour which, according to the law of karman, necessarily points to an accumulation or a 'stock' of meritorious and unmeritorious karman which has to be 'spent' in order to step out of the cycle of the law. The conscious effort on the part of man to attempt to use the fetter of karman ultimately to be free of its bondage, constitutes the first step towards exploiting the soteriological role of the principle of karman.

That it is indeed possible to spend karman is clearly expressed in the following verse. (It is to be noted that whilst the principle itself can never be destroyed—being eternal, as seen in the previous quotation—its dissociation from a particular ātman only is possible.)

At the time of [cosmic] sleep, it [karman] approaches maturity, at the time of creation it is used, and in the end [at the time of cosmic destruction] it remains in māyā; it does not come to
rest without being made use of. What this description implies is that experience, which means the 'using up' of karman, is the means by which karman is brought to rest or made inoperative. In terms of the theory, however, this seems impossible insofar as the very process of using up the stock of karman itself involves further accumulation of karman, without an end in sight of its neutralization. This problem has a direct bearing on the three kinds of karman which Śaiva Siddhānta adopts in the form generally accepted by many other schools, and which need mention here.

The three types of karman or effects (even in seminal form) of deeds and actions are: the accumulated stock of karman which is always associated with the ātman's recurrent births and called sañcita-karman; the karman already in progress which is responsible for the ātman's present condition and called prārabdha-karman; and the karman to be incurred in the future and called āgāmi-karman. Whilst these three kinds of karman are self-explanatory, the concept of sañcita-karman is particularly interesting for Śaiva Siddhānta philosophical anthropology. The perplexing problem associated with it concerns the original, intrinsic nature of the ātman, already seen as all-knowing, all-pervasive, constant, and of the nature of consciousness which it shares with Śivam. The question that arises is: how does the ātman become associated with a
stock of karman in the first place? In other words: given the above description of the atman's own nature, how does it accumulate karman at the outset? These are crucial questions for the philosophical anthropology of the school insofar as the atman's nature constitutes the essence of man. The answers concern the very validity of such questions. For the Siddhāntin, these questions would not only be inadmissible but an attempt to answer them would involve a circular argument: the accumulated karman is the cause for the atman's present condition; the present condition is due to the accumulated karman associated with the atman. The questions are inadmissible for two main reasons. Firstly, it is beyond the scope of human ability to grasp the origin of the operation of karman which involves a 'stepping out' of the framework not only of karman, but also of māyā and ānava-malam. The solution of the problem is contained only in the condition of the possibility of mokṣa, when the atman's powers of volition, knowledge, and action manifest themselves in an unfettered state. Secondly, the questions themselves presuppose an inadmissible perspective to the karman theory: the problems may be said to arise because the questions are from the perspective of what in fact is logically concluded, i.e., from the perspective of the accumulated karman which is acknowledged on the basis of a reflective analysis of man's present condition. In other words, it is on the basis of
the attempt to rationally arrive at a cause for the present effect, or man's state in the world, that the theory of karman is postulated in the first place. It is prārabdha-karman whose operation is in progress—on the principle that the present effect has a cause—that points to saṃcita and āgāmi-karman. Therefore, the concern with the present condition constitutes the admissible starting point and appropriate perspective toward an understanding of the theory of karman and of man who is said to be a victim of its inexorable operation.

In the threefold classification of karman, two principles are indispensable for its operation, viz., kāla-tattva (the category of time) and niyati-tattva (the category responsible for karman to be associated with a particular ātman). It was seen how time is practically woven into the karman theory itself with reference to the three-dimensional view of karman in its relation to the past, the present and the future. Further, if the law of karman is to operate systematically then it presupposes a principle which should 'allocate' to a particular ātman the consequences, or effects, of its own involvement in experiences. In other words, the karman incurred by one ātman should not be visited upon another. The principle which operates in collusion with karman to guarantee its proper operation in this regard is niyati-tattva. An awareness that the ātman is itself responsible for all the
karman incurred and that the effects rebound on that very ātman itself, places full responsibility on man as the agent (kartri) of karman. What is presupposed in this Śaiva Siddhānta teaching which bears on the philosophical anthropology of the system, is man's responsibility to 'control' karman by operating within the law itself. This responsibility reflects itself in man's behaviour and, thus, enters the realm of ethics and morality. Whatever man does can be classified either as what yields merit (puṇyam) or demerit (pāpam). It is not the case that the meritorious acts are weighed against the unmeritorious ones and that some balance is naturally struck. In terms of the law of karman, the fruit of every kind of act, meritorious or otherwise, must necessarily be reaped. In other words, there is no escape on the part of man from the responsibility of the 'ownership' of all deeds and from the inexorability of the law of karman requiring the necessary 'experience' of the effects of actions.

The impossibility of meritorious acts outweighing the unmeritorious ones and the impossibility of man escaping the clutches of the law of karman, point to questions regarding the precise means by which the shackles of karman are broken--which is indispensable for mokṣa. This point concerns, as already seen, the exploitation of the soteriological function of karman--together with that of māyā--which will be dealt with after developing further the
Saiva Siddhānta philosophical anthropology. What is to be noted in anticipation, however, is that the "moral act of man is evidence of the immanent freedom in his empirical life." Further:

Factually [the] law of karma taken by itself implies nothing more than pure succession and a dependent or relative origination. A consciousness of the inalienability of the means and the end is, only negatively, a search for freedom and implicitly a demand for transcendent freedom. 

What has been attempted in this section is a brief survey of some of the main features of the karman theory. Karman is an indispensable term that forms an inextricable part of the basic framework of Saiva Siddhānta vocabulary, evident in the system of categories developed by the school. The Siddhānta treatment of man would be impossible without recourse to it. The entire framework of the vocabulary outlined above is intended to facilitate the discussion of the subject matter in the chapters to follow.

1.5 Summary

It would be useful to attempt to state briefly the Saiva Siddhānta perspective to philosophical anthropology, in the light of what has already been presented. The essence of man constitutes what has been described as the Ātman and defined as the principle of consciousness intrinsic to man. In the concern with what constitutes the essence of man, the Ātman is initially considered in terms of its association with ānava-malam which fetters, shackles,
or renders impossible any expression or manifestation of the ātman's powers of consciousness, evident in volition, knowledge, and action. Ānava-malam is described as sahaja-malam for it is 'born with' or 'arises with' the ātman. As a fetter which completely binds the ātman, cutting it off from itself, so to speak, it is called literally prati-bandham. It is responsible for isolating the ātman, excluding it and making it exist alone (kevalin). It is in a forlorn state (avasthā) called kevala-avasthā.

At the instigation of pati, the 'lord' of the ātman that 'becomes' a fettered entity (paśu) on account of the ānava-malam, a modicum of scope for the expression of the ātman's powers is provided by māyā and karman. Although these two categories share the nature of a bond or fetter (pāśam) characteristic or malam as such, they are, however, consequential or adventitious (āgantuka) fetters. They are provided as a consequence of the plight of the ātman. They serve as an antidote counteracting, as it were, the overwhelming capacity of ānava-malam. The acquisition of these two fetters signifies the transition from the isolated kevala state to a state called sakala-avasthā, in which the ātman is gradually furnished with the means and objects of experience. Since māyā is what the ātman is in relation to, as regards being associated with the constituents of experience, it is called sambandham; and karman is called anubandham because it is what 'accompanies' the ātman as
long as it is involved in the world. It is the sakala state which appropriately constitutes the Śaiva Siddhānta philosophical anthropology. In other words, the sakala-paśu, the fettered being in the world—fettered by ānava, karman, and māyā-malam—is man. Man, who is essentially the ātman, therefore is to be seen as 'arising' as a consequence of a transition from being a kevala-paśu to being a sakala-paśu.

While a modicum of freedom and differentiation is provided to the sakala-paśu, i.e., to man, this situation in fact intensifies man's predicament of being in a state of bondage. The 'journey' of the ātman has been from one kind of bound state to another, from kevala to sakala. The description of man's condition presupposes a means by which bondage is overcome through bondage itself. Paradoxically stated, this involves becoming fetterless through the very fetters themselves. The conscious attempt on the part of man to come to grips with a fettered existence and to strive for the realization of the essential nature of the ātman—the conscious principle which is man's defining and characteristic feature—is to progressively continue the journey from the sakala state to the state of pristine purity called suddha-avasthā. Man transcends man by being man, i.e., by realizing the essential, inalienable nature of man. In this state, malam is at rest, and the ātman completely one with itself. It will be seen how at the end
of this journey, the ātman is said to 'regain' its original nature in which the intrinsic powers of consciousness have an unfettered expression and manifestation. That it is possible to achieve this state is expressed in the condition of the possibility of mokṣa, where it is no longer appropriate to distinguish Śaiva Siddhānta philosophical anthropology from Śaiva Siddhānta theology. Further, it will be seen how the philosophical anthropology has to be re-read in the background of the theology where the ātman, the essential nature of man, is to be considered in its relation to the godhead, Śivam—a relation in which to regard the expression of consciousness (cit) either as that of Śivam or that of the ātman is inapplicable at this transcendental level.

The three states, kevala, sakala, and suddha, are grouped together in what are called the causal states of consciousness (kārana-avasthās) insofar as they are the causes of effect-states of consciousness (kārya-avasthās) and from which they are to be distinguished. The effect-states are five in number: the wakeful state (jāgrat); the dream state of sleep (svapna); the dreamless state of sleep, or deep sleep (susupti); the 'fourth' state of consciousness (turīya); and the state 'beyond the fourth' (turīyatīta). Although technically the five effect states apply to each of the three causal states, special attention will be given to the five states as they feature
particularly in the *sakāla* state. It is in this realm that they specifically fall within the Śaiva Siddhānta understanding of man, as is clear from their terminologies.

1.6 The texts on which the study is based

In the chapters to follow, an attempt is made to deal in detail with specific issues toward the Śaiva Siddhānta understanding of man. These issues cover three broad areas: an analysis and investigation of man's various states of consciousness (*avasthas*) and how the system employs them in accounting for both empirical and transcendental experience (*bhoga*); an exploration of man as a cognizer and verifier of valid knowledge, which is the concern with epistemology (*prāmāṇyavāda*) including within it the concern with man as a linguistic being; and, finally, a consideration of the nature of the transition involved through a life of *yoga* and gnosis (*jñāna*) when *nāṣu* (man) regains its unconditioned nature as the ātman (*ātmalābha*) -- which is evident in the fact that the tradition accepts that there indeed exists a condition of the possibility of a freedom (*mokṣa*) from fettered existence. In dealing with these issues this study draws heavily from a voluminous (untranslated) commentary by Śivāgrayogin (sixteenth century) on one of the most basic texts of the Śaiva Siddhānta tradition, the Śivajñānabodham. One of the most remarkable features of this text--apart from inspiring
several voluminous commentaries on it—is that it contains only twelve verses, in twenty-four lines, which in the Sanskrit is set to a metre called anuṣṭub.\textsuperscript{91}

There is an ongoing debate as regards the origin of this text, viz., whether the text is originally in Sanskrit and part of the Raurava Āgama\textsuperscript{92} or whether it is an independent work originally in the Tamil language.\textsuperscript{93} The question of the origin of the text is undoubtedly of immense significance especially in the light of the authoritative status it has in the tradition. The relevance of determining its origin pertains particularly to the historical development of Šaiva Siddhānta in association with the emergence of the school's philosophical literature. The lack of any conclusive evidence to settle the issue, however, does not preclude a study of the content of the text.\textsuperscript{94} It is beyond the scope of this study to discuss the historical development of the tradition and the literature associated with it in each significant phase.\textsuperscript{95} The text, nonetheless, is extant in both Sanskrit and Tamil with several commentaries on them. This study, as already stated, is based on the Sanskrit commentary by Śivāgrayogin on the Sanskrit version of the Śivājñānabodham.\textsuperscript{96} In view of the importance of this basic text, which may be said to be as fundamental to Šaiva Siddhānta as the BrahmaSūtra is to Advaita Vedānta\textsuperscript{97}, the text with a translation is given in an appendix—the verses are taken from Śivāgrayogin's
Biographical details about Śivāgrayogin are scanty but it seems clear that he flourished in the sixteenth century and, according to tradition, that he belonged to the tradition of teachers called the Skanda-parampara. Two of his works in Sanskrit, which complement each other, represent his brand of Siddhānta. One is explicitly a commentary on the Śivajñānabodham called simply Śivāgrahāṣya which states each verse of the Śivajñānabodham followed by an elaborate commentary on it. The only publication of this work, not now available, is in the Grantha script. The other work is called Śaivaparibhāṣā which closely resembles the concise, scholastic, and systematic approach of the former. This study draws chiefly from the former, untranslated work, following the text closely in attempting to grasp its intricate arguments.

The Siddhāntin's standpoint is derived preeminently from a critical assessment of the opponents' views, rejecting or incorporating them on the grounds of an argumentation consistent with the school's own philosophical assumptions, and, thereby, arriving at what it calls the conclusive, final, or established position (siddhānta). It is from this very process that the name of the school may be derived, viz., as being the established, final position concerning all matters relating to or belonging to, derived
or coming from, Śiva, i.e., Śaiva Siddhānta. The proper understanding of the Siddhānta perspective therefore involves an analysis of the arguments which establish a particular point. As already pointed out, the issues to be dealt with as outlined above are concerned with the philosophical anthropology of the school entailed in the concept of paśu-ātman, and constitute the established view concerning the Śaiva Siddhānta understanding of man.
"Among those standard themes of Western philosophical thought which are conspicuously absent in Indian (specifically Hindu) philosophy, man seems to be one of the most conspicuous ones." Wilhelm Halbfass, "Anthropological Problems in Classical Indian Philosophy" in Beiträge zur Indienforschung, Ernst Waldschmidt zum 80. Geburtstag gewidmet (Berlin: Museum für Indische Kunst, 1977), p. 225. He goes on to add: "To be sure, there are images of man in the Indian tradition, there are challenging ideas and perspectives relating to what we call man; there may even be an elaborate implicit anthropology. But there is no tradition of thematic and explicit thought about man, of trying to define and explicate the nature of man and to distinguish it from other forms of life and existence; there is no tradition of explicit philosophical anthropology, comparable to that tradition in the West ..." ibid.


This point is made by H.O. Pappé in the article "Philosophical Anthropology," The Encyclopedia of Philosophy, 1972 Reprint ed. See also Michael Landmann, Philosophical Anthropology, trans. David A. Parent, (Philadelphia: The Westminster Press, 1971), p. 53 where these questions are summed up in the one question: "What is man?"

Ibid.

Ibid., p. 160.

H.O. Pappé, "On Philosophical Anthropology", Australasian Journal of Philosophy, vol. 39 (1961): 49. Cf. also the point that "the task of a critical anthropology will be to determine, from the point of view of reflection on the self, the limits of all knowledge". Berhard Groethuysen, "Towards

9Saiva Siddhânta differs significantly from the Sânkhya, Yoga, and Advaita Vedânta views in attributing to consciousness (cit) the powers (saktis) of volition (icchâ), knowledge (jñâna), and action (kriyâ), so that consciousness and its powers can be spoken of as comprising a single unit.

10Ibid., p. 59.


12The title of the section, ibid.

13Ibid., p. 23.

14Practically all the standard works on Saiva Siddhânta seem to emphasize the theology more strongly than—and even at the expense of—the anthropology. For Saiva Siddhânta theology see especially: M. Dhavamony, Love of God (Oxford: Oxford Clarendon Press, 1971); Rohan A. Dunuwila, Saiva Siddhânta Theology (Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1985); H.W. Schomerus, Der Câiva-Siddhânta, eine Mystik Indiens (Leipzig: J.C. Hinrichs'sche Buchhandlung, 1912).

15Thus, one can speak of several branches of philosophical anthropology such as: cultural philosophical anthropology, biological philosophical anthropology, psychological philosophical anthropology, and theological philosophical anthropology. See The Encyclopedia of Philosophy, s.v. "Philosophical Anthropology", by H.O. Pappé.

16Quoted by Michael Landmann, op.cit., p.55. He also quotes in the same place what Max Scheler noteworthily wrote towards the end of his life: "If there is a philosophical task whose solution our age needs with singular desperation it is that of a philosophical anthropology. I mean a basic science on the nature and constitution of man."


18Michael Landmann, op.cit., p. 66.

19This idea is part of the 'pool of ideas' that Indian systems of thought draw from (including, e.g., karma, sahsâra, and dukkha). Even the heterodox schools of Buddhism and Jainism regard mokâsa as the goal to be attained by man. The reactionary Cârvâka school, whilst not
accepting the 'traditional' view of mokṣa, has its own hedonistic conception of what liberation means for man. In any case, only man has the capability and privilege for realising mokṣa; gods, animals and other beings are excluded. Cf., also, Karl H. Potter, Presuppositions of India's Philosophies (Englewood Cliffs: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1963), p. 255: "...the aims of classical Indian thought are such as to guarantee the relevance of philosophy to a human predicament and longing which does not change through the ages."

20 The four are: the gratification of desire (kāma); the acquirement of wealth (artha); the discharge of duty (dharma); and final emancipation (mokṣa).

21 Cf. Potter, Presuppositions, p. 6: "... mokṣa or complete freedom, is a state, but the sense in which this is so is one which makes it inappropriate to apply the same description to the other three. There is no state of artha, of kāma, or of dharma which a man may come to realize or rest in."

22 The Encyclopedia of Philosophy, s.v. "Indian Philosophy," by Ninian Smart.

23 In the case of Śaiva Siddhānta, for example, the views on consciousness (cit) and its powers (saktis) constitute the crucial issue in the metaphysics of the school. Cit-sakti features prominently in epistemology as the only ultimately valid means (pramāṇa) of knowledge. This conclusion is arrived at logically in the discussion of what constitutes a pramāṇa, on the one hand, and karāṇa or sādhana ('instrument' of knowledge) on the other, Insofar as cit-sakti is expressed in all human behaviour, where 'values' are expressed in man's actions and deeds, it enters the field of ethics—thus, one can speak of an 'Indian conception of values' (on this see the posthumously published book which bears this title, by M. Hiriyanna [Mysore: Kavyalaya Publishers, 1975], which critically discusses logical value, ethical value, absolute value, and aesthetic value).

24 Cf. the point that "Śaṅkara refuses to discuss the issue of whether the jīvanmukta continues to live or not" because the state of the liberated one corresponds to what is called "inner experience", J.L. Masson and M.V. Patwardhan, Aesthetic Rapture, 2 vols. (Poonā: Deccan College, 1970), 2:38. In support of this point Śaṅkara's Brahma-sūtrabhāṣya IV. 1. 15 is quoted: kathāṁ hy ekasya sva-hṛdayāpṛatyayam brahmavedanāṃ (brahmaññānañ, or brahmānu-bhāvañ denadhārañān ca pārena pratiḥkṣetum śakyeta. (The words in parenthesis are as they appear in the source cited.)
The situation is analogous to the one in which the contribution, though not readily accepted as such, particularly of the Cārvāka school—with its unorthodox and reactionary views—was that it provided a greater need for the emphasis on and concern with epistemology. The Cārvāka is usually caricatured as a philosophical villain and in the absence of any complete original work of the school, an attempt has been made to reconstruct the virtues of the school from available references to it—ignoring the traditional prejudice against the school which leads to an understandable misrepresentation of it. See Keval Krishnan Mittal, Materialism in Indian Thought (Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal Publishers, 1974), pp. 22-60.

The obvious cases in point are: accepting the 25 categories of the Sāṅkhya system in addition to 11 of its own (apart from those of Śivam/pati, ātman/paśu, and malam/pāsa); the description of the 'states of consciousness' which, in addition to the four of Advaita Vedānta, includes a fifth state, literally called 'beyond the fourth'; and the ascription to the nature of consciousness of powers (śaktis) which are intrinsic to it and to which they are constitutive—this is a crucial deviation from the Sāṅkhya, Yoga, and Advaita Vedānta views on consciousness. (There seems to be no doubt that the Sāṅkhya system—traditionally considered to be the oldest in India—provides the basic framework for Śaiva Siddhānta, especially as far as the doctrine of tattvas, or categories, is concerned. See H.W. Schomerus, Der Caiva-Siddhānta, p. 17; "Dass z.B. die Tattva-Lehre, wie wir sie in dem auf den Āgama aufgebauten Caiva-Siddhānta vorfinden, jüngeren Datums ist als die Tattva-Lehre des Sāṁkhya-Systems, steht wohl ausser Frage"; and p. 170: "Es ist ... möglich, dass der Siddhānta die Lehre von der Ewigkeit der potentiellen Materie von der Sāṁkhya-Schule übernommen hat.")

See above note. Also, although the term pūrva-pakṣa literally means 'the first objection to an assertion in any discussion' or 'the prima facie view or argument in any question', the term applies to the opponent's view or the 'other' view.

See, e.g., Mrigendra Āgama (Mrigendram), Devakoṭṭai, p. 90 1928, ch. 2,10: "There is a discussion of liberation. Together with the means for it, in the Vedānta, Sāṅkhya, Jaina, Vaiśeṣika, and other views. What is the merit in the Śiva Āgamas?" (vedānta-sāṅkhya-sa-sat-pādārthika-matādīgu / sa-sādhana muktir-asti ko-viśeṣaś-śiva-āgama.) It may be noted also that the heading of this chapter is "paramokṣa-nirāsa-prakaraṇam", the chapter on the refutation of final emancipation [in other schools]. For more details about the
Agama literature see the section on śabda bramāpa below, Chapter 3, p. 197.

29 Thus, in his commentary on the Śivajñānabodham, a work as basic to Śaiva Siddhānta as the Brahmāsūtras to Vedānta, Arunānti divides his work into two parts, dealing with the "own view" (svapakṣa) and with the "other view" (parapakṣa). See the German translation from the Tamil original, D.H.W. Schomerus, Arunānti Śivajñānasiddhiyār, 2 vols. (Wiesbaden: Franz Steiner Verlag, 1981).

30 The Vaiśeṣika system has 7 padārthas, Sākhya 25, Vedānta 7, and Śaiva Siddhānta 36. It may be noted here that the meaning of tattva corresponds to the German word Tatsächlichkeit. Also, the great saying (mahā-vākyā) "you (tvam) are that (tat)" is represented in Vedānta by the word tattva and is interpreted to express the identity of existence as such with the one eternal brahman.

31 M. Monier-Williams, A Sanskrit-English Dictionary, Motilal Banarsidass ed., s.v. "śiva". The stem śiva is the form for deriving the neuter śivam, the masculine śivaḥ and the feminine śīvā. In Śaiva Siddhānta, the masculine and neuter forms are often used interchangeably and the feminine form denotes the power (śakti) inherent in the masculine and neuter forms.

32 The metaphor that is commonly used in the tradition is that of the ocean. Śivam represents the area enclosing the ocean, water represents the atman, and salt malam. Whilst this analogy is a fair one, it will become evident that it is unsatisfactory in describing the state of liberation when the atman is liberated from the 'influence' of malam.


35 Na-adhyakṣāṁ na-api tal-laiṅgaṁ na śabdam-api śāṅkaram, Ācintya Agama, quoted ibid., p. 30. Cf. also: na-adhyakṣāṁ na-api tal-laiṅgaṁ na śabdam-api śāṅkaram / jñānam-ābhāti vimalāṁ sarvādā sarva-vastuṣu (The knowledge pertaining to śāṅkaram, i.e., śivam, is not [obtained through] either perception, or inference, or verbal authority. It shines
forth purely at all times in all things), Mrigendra Agama, op.cit., 5:16, p. 172.


37 Aprameyam-nirdesyaṁ-anupaṁyaṁ-anāmayam / sūkṣmaṁ sarvagaṁ nityaṁ dhruvam-avyayam-īśvaram // śiva-tattvam-iti proktāṁ sarva-adhvopari saṁsthitam //, Śvāyambhuva Agama, vidyāpāda, 4:3 and 4:6b, quoted ibid., p. 57. The explanation of the descriptions is given thus: "Unknowable on account of being infinite; indescribable on account of being invisible; incomparable on account of there being no similarity [to anything]; stainless on account of being without an impurity; subtle on account of being imperceptible; omnipresent on account of pervasiveness; eternal on account of having no cause; firm on account of immovability; indestructible on account of fulness; and majestic on account of ownership." (Aprameyam-anantatvāt-anirdesyaṁ-alakṣyaṁ / anupaṁyaṁ-asādṛiśyād-vimalatvād-anāmayam // sūkṣmaṁ ca-anupalabhyaṁtvād-vyāpakatvāc-ca sarvagam / nityaṁ kāraṇa-śūnyatvād-acalavāc-ca tad-dhruvam / avyayām pari-pūrṇatvāt svāmi-bhāvāt-tattheśvaram //), from the same Agama, quoted in Śaivaparibhāṣā, op.cit., p. 29.


39 Śivajñanabodham, verse 6. See Appendix 2 for the Sanskrit.

40 On this sixteenth-century thinker see details below, p. 59.

41 ...dṛṣṭaya viduḥ bhūḥjate, in Krishan Sastri, ed., Śivāgrabhaśya (Madras: Suryanar Koil Adinam, 1920) p. 339. In the same place it is said also: ...tasya mukta-bhogyatvam, "...[there is] an experience of it [śivam] by the liberated one" where the liberated one is the wise one, the one who knows, the one who has had the experience of Śivam.

Ekaiva khalu cic-chaktis-śivasya samavāyinī, Ratnatrayam, Devakoṭṭai, 1925, verse 180, p. 66.

44Ya tasya vimalā śaktiḥ śivasya samavāyinī / sā-eva mūrtiḥ kriyā-bhedāt-sādākyā tanur-ucyate, ibid., verse 270, p. 92. In his commentary on this verse Aghorasiva says that Sādākhya means Sādāsīva (cf. Śaivāgamparibhāṣāmañjarī, op.cit., 1:4a, p. 57, which uses the second word). There are five Sādākhyaśis which are forms of Sādāsīva which are involved in the cosmological functions of creation, etc.: for details on these forms see Hélène Brunner-Lachaux, Somaśambhupaddhati, 3 vols. (Pondichéry: Institut Français D'Indologie, 1963), Introduction, 1:X.

45Tayā dhṛitam jagat-sarvam-eka yā-aneka-rūpayā, Sarva-jñānottara, quoted in Śaivāgamparibhāṣāmañjarī, op.cit., 1:4b, p. 57.

46This point will be dealt with when the relation of both is considered towards the end of this study.

47Sarvajñās-sarvagāś-śāntas-sarvātmā sarvatomukhaḥ // atindriyo nirālambas-susūkṣmaḥ sāśvato'vyayaḥ / suniṣkalo nirālamo na-ākhyeyo vyāpako dhruvāḥ // nirupamyo'prameyaś-cā paramātmā prakīrtitaḥ / parasmin-tejas vyakte tatra-sthaś-śivatām vrajet // Śivayogaratna 113b-115 in Tara Michael, ed., and trans., Śivayogaratna (Pondichéry: Institut Français D'Indologie, 1975), p. 60. The translation is my own. Compare a similar verse in Mrigendra Āgama, op.cit., 6:7, p. 191: "The ātman is not non-pervasive, not momentary, not single, not inanimate, not a non-agent, and is one possessing consciousness uninterruptedly since it is heard that [it attains] the state of śivam at the destruction of the bonds" (na-avyāpako na-kṣaṇiko na-eko na-api jaḍātmakaḥ/ na-akartā-abhinna-cid-yogī pāśa-ante śivatā-śruteḥ //).

48Bhāvayed-ātmanā-ātmānam-ātmanyeva-ātmanah stithiḥ, Śivayogaratna, op.cit., 119a, p. 60.

49Ātma-lābhāt-paro labhāḥ kvacid-anyo na vidyate / tad-ātmanam-upāsīta yo'yaṃ-ātmā paras-tu saḥ //, ibid., 121, p. 60.

50See below, Chapter 2, p. 120 for these arguments.

51Cf. verse 7 of the Śivajñānabodham, line 1: na-acit-cit-sannidhau kintu na vittas-te ubhe mithaḥ, "in the presence of cit there is no acit and, further, these mutually do not experience each other." See Appendix 2 for the entire text.
This is a significant point of departure from the Sāṅkhya school where dynamism constitutes the essential feature of matter as such, viz., prakṛiti, which is in a state of perpetual movement or dynamism.


Māti yatra jagat-suptau sriṣṭvā vā yāti sā tataḥ / māyā tena samākhyāta tat-tvam-uktaṁ guru-uttamaṁ //, quoted in the Saivapribhāsa of Sivagrayogin, op.cit., p. 87.

This position is similar to the Sāṅkhya view of prakṛiti operating for the sake of the puruṣa. There are at least three clear statements validating this point in the SāṅkhyaSaṁkhyaKarikā of Tāvarakṛishṇa, ed. and tr. S.S. Suryanarayana Sastri (Madras: University of Madras, 1935), verses 56-58, pp. 103-107. Verse 57 only may be quoted here to substantiate: "As non-intelligent milk functions for the nourishment of the calf, even so does Primal Nature function for the liberation of the Spirit." (Vatsa-vivṛddhi-nimittam kṣīrasya yathā pravṛttir ajñasya / puruṣa-vimokṣa-nimittam tathā pravṛttāṁ pradhānasya //, ibid., pp. 104-105.) The important difference, however, between the two schools is that whereas prakṛiti in Sāṅkhya is endowed with power (śakti) or activity, for the Siddhāntin śakti is the special feature of consciousness (cit). Besides, the Sāṅkhya category of prakṛiti occupies a 'lower' position in the Siddhānta scheme of categories. A reason one can furnish for this difference is that for the Siddhāntin the Sāṅkhya category of prakṛiti is inadequate insofar as it does not account for the other dimensions of reality, or the role of māyā, which the Siddhāntin furnishes in the doctrine of the 36 categories. The differences in the role or function of the material cause of the universe is evident in the number
of categories derived from \textit{māyā} in Śaiva Siddhānta which is numerically higher than the 24 of \textit{prakṛiti} in the Sānkhya system.

60It may be noted that insofar as \textit{māyā} is dependent ultimately on \textit{sakti} for any kind of dynamism, \textit{māyā} and \textit{sakti} (the instrument of \textit{sivam} responsible for evolution) are both causes of the universe. Further, whilst the relation between the two obtains at the transcendental level where distinctions are not readily discernible—except conceptually—the one is regarded as the material cause (\textit{māyā}) operating only through the impulsion of the other which is the instrumental cause (\textit{sakti}).

61For the descriptive survey of the categories which follows, see also the table of categories in Appendix 1. The survey is a summary of Śivāgrayogin's Śivāgrabhāṣya, pp. 143-158; also his Śaivaparibhāṣā, pp. 79-131; and the Mṛigendra Ağama, pp. 251-312.

62See also K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, p. 231, and the section dealing with the 36 categories, pp. 220-247.

63That \textit{bindu} is a synonym for \textit{suddha-māyā} is evident from Ratnatraya (Devakoṭṭai: 1925) verse 22, p. 11: "That is called \textit{bindu}—also known as supreme sound—which is the cause of sound, \textit{bindu}, and letter, from which is produced the pure path where it exists and where it merges." (Jāyate'dhvā yataś-suddho vartate yatra iīyate / sa binduḥ para-nāda-ākhyaḥ nāda-bindv-arṇa-kāraṇam //) The second term \textit{bindu}, which is an evolute, is not to be confused with the original \textit{bindu} as the material cause synonymous with \textit{suddha-māyā}. The other synonym referred to, viz., \textit{kundalini}, stands for \textit{sakti} and represents the latent power which awaits manifestation in the form of sound, etc., emerging from the supreme sound (\textit{para-nāda}), the term identical with \textit{suddha-māyā}, the material principle which forms the basis of creation.

64Not to be confused with \textit{sivam} as one of the three \textit{tattvas} (tattva-traya) constituting ultimate reality.

65For particular details about which of the three (icchā, īśāna, kriyā) \textit{saktis} is specifically responsible for these categories, see K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, p. 232.

66Ibid., p. 233.

67Ibid., p. 235.

68See also Śivāgrayogin's Śaivaparibhāṣā, pp. 103-104.
The point at which each is derived in the scheme is to be noted so as not to confuse the use of these terms.


Although in some contexts the word *citta* may be rendered as memory, intelligence or even reason, in the context here it refers to the principle which is responsible for all these faculties which may be said to belong to the psyche.

"From another manifestation of the intellect is produced the ego (garva) which is an instrument of knowledge [and] by whose function the five bodily airs move." (Atha vyakta-antarād-buddheḥ garvo bhūt-karaṇam citaḥ / vyāpārād-yaśa ceṣṭante sārīrāḥ pāchca vāyavaḥ //). Mṛigendra Āgama, op.cit., 11:20, p. 307.

"It [ānākāra-tattva] is manifested in a threefold way: the first is taijasa, the second is vaikārika, and the next is bhūtadīka. The part that is dominated by sattva is called taijasa here, what is dominated by rajas is vaikārita, and what has an excess of tamas is bhūtādi." (Sa ca trividha uddriṣṭaṇa prathamas-tatra taijasaḥ / vaikārika dvitiyaḥ syāt-tathā bhūtadīka para // Saśvenotkriśṭa-bhāgo yaḥ sa taijasa iḥocaye / vaikārito rajasotkriśto bhūtadīs-tamasas-adhikah //). Pauṣkara Āgama, puṁs-tattva paṭalaḥ, 140-141, quoted in Śivāgrayogin's *Śaivaparībhāṣā*, op.cit., p. 116. This threefold differentiation of the anākāra-tattva is taken over from the Sāṅkhya school with a significant and noteworthy difference: for Sāṅkhya sattva is called vaikārika and rajas is called taijasa. This is stated in Sāṅkhyaśāstra, S. S. Suryanarayana Sastrī, ed. and tr. (Madras: University of Madras, 1935), v. 25, pp. 58-59: "From that form of individuation (which is known as) Vaikīrta (and is) characterised by Sattva (godness) the eleven-fold aggregate proceeds; the subtle elements from (that form known as) Bhūtādi; it is of the nature of Tamas (darkness); both (proceed) from (that form of individuation known as) Taijasa." (sattvika evaṣaṣakaḥ pravartate vaikīrta anāh-kārāt / bhūtādes tāmātraḥ, so tāmasaḥ, taijāsād ubhayam //)

It is to be noted also that, unlike Siddhānta, Sāṅkhya does not attribute to rajas the responsibility of evolving any of the remaining categories which are an outcome only of the predominance either of the sattva or tamas quality of the anāh-kāra-tattva. It may be argued that even for Sāṅkhya no activity is possible without the rajas element in the quality of things and, therefore, while its function is not given a separate status, it is presupposed in the roles of sattva and tamas: "If Sattva and Tamas are the material cause of these evolutes, Rajas is their efficient cause." (Note to the above verse, ibid.) Accepting, in principle, the predominance of one particular quality (guna) over the
other two, Śaiva Siddhānta distinguishes categorically the consequence of the domination of each quality and, hence, the threefold classification of the three qualities (guṇas) of ahaṅkāra-tattva. See ibid., p. xxxii and p. xxxiii for the tables schematically distinguishing the Śaṅkhya and Śaiva Siddhānta evolution of categories. Cf., also, the scheme given in Appendix 1.

For example, when it operates together with the organ of sight it is detached from the other sense organs. Further, the quickness and speed evident in perception is attributed to the function of manas.

There can be no doubt that one can speak of different versions or interpretations of the theory of karman: the Jains, for example, view karman as 'particles' which adhere to the jīva and weigh it down, thereby perpetuating saṁsāra, or a life of suffering in the world; the Mimāṁsakas view karman chiefly as ceremonial rites or rituals to be performed because they are the injunction of the Veda, and the rites are said to generate an unseen factor (adṛṣṭa) helpful in bringing about mokṣa; for the Buddhists the theory of karman is allied to desire and thirst (trīṣṇa) which are the cause for suffering (duṇḍha) in the world, the elimination of which (trīṣṇa) makes karman, the factor responsible for saṁsāra, inoperative; further, for the Śāṅkyavādin karman would be ultimately non-existent, as is the so-called agent of karman; for the Śaiva Siddhāntin, as will be seen, karman is a principle as 'real' as māya intended not only to explain man's predicament, but also to serve as a means by which man's essential nature is given an opportunity for expression and manifestation.

M. Monier-Williams, A Sanskrit-English Dictionary, s.v "karman."

M. Hiriyanna, Values, p. 169. He says in the same place: "There is a difference of opinion as regards the origin of this doctrine. Some have stated that it was borrowed by the Aryans from the primitive people of their new home, among whom a belief in the passing of the soul after death into trees, etc., was found. But the explanation ignores that belief is a superstition and therefore essentially irrational, while the doctrine of karma aims at satisfying man's logical as well as moral consciousness. On account of this important difference, the doctrine should be regarded not as connected with any primitive belief, but as independently evolved by the Indians themselves." It may be noted that some clarification about the term "primitive people" would have been useful.

The reference is taken from the footnote, ibid. The exact
passage in the Aitareya-upaniṣad is: "Then, this, his other self, having done his duty in full and having attained old age, departs, and departing hence is born again ... Referring to the Highest Reality there is the following Vedic verse (Ṛg IV. 27. 1) declared by the sage Vāmadeva: 'Ah! Dwelling inside the womb I understood all the births of all the gods. A hundred bodies as strong as steel restrained me, but like a hawk I broke them by force and came out swiftly.'" (Ath-a-asya-ayam-itara ātmā kṛta-kṛtyo vayogataḥ praiti sa itaḥ prayanneva punar-jāyate ... tad-uktam riṣiṇā garbhe nu sann-anv-eṣām-avedam-ahaṁ devāṁ janimāṁ śatam mā pura āyāṁ-ārakṣan-adhaḥ śyeṇo javasā niradiyam-iti), Swami Sharvananda, tr. and ed., Aitareyopanishad (Madras: Sri Ramakrishna Math, 1959), pp. 63 and 67. Although this quotation refers only to rebirth, it is relevant insofar as the theory of karman includes transmigration, in addition to morality and ethics.

79 This point may be seen in the light of the question one can ask as to why Śāṅkara begins his commentary on a text concerning the ultimate, transcendent nature of brahman with an exegesis on the theory of superimposition, which is traditionally referred to as his famous adhyāśabhaṣya. This is his prelude to the Brahmasūtrabhāṣya which not only lays the foundation of his views, but also furnishes the one, single clue to the understanding of his philosophy of advaita. It may be suggested that insofar as his theory of superimposition is based on a reflection of the human situation—evident in his analysis of dream experience in relation to experiences in the wakeful state, and of cases of erroneous knowledge based on ignorance (e.g., the rope-snake analogy)—that Śāṅkara attempts to make credible the ultimate reality of the transcendent brahman on the basis of empirical observation and a reflection on it. In other words, just as the theory of brahman as the ground of all knowledge is established through an analysis of man’s concrete experience, so too should the theory of karman be made credible by its reference to empirical experience, i.e., to arrive at the validity of the karman theory on the basis of an analysis of and reflection on the human situation. It is to be noted, however, that karman does not share the status attributed to brahman.

80 The point that śakti is the (instrumental) cause which sets in motion the dynamics and mechanics of karman will be dealt with in another context. What is to be noted here is that the principle or law of karman is to be distinguished from man’s own responsibility to incur karman and thereby, to be a victim of the law.

82Cf. Mrigendra Agama, op.cit., 8:3, p. 220: "Being subtle, karman is unseen since it is generated by activity." (Karma-vyāp̄ira-janyatva-adṛṣṭām sūkṣma-bhāvataḥ).

83Ibid., 8:5. Svāpe vipākam-abhyeti tat-sṛṣṭav-upayuyate / māyāyām vartate ca-ante na-abhuktām layameti ca //

84Cf. also what Schomerus, op.cit., pp. 128-129 says: "Activity as well as the feeling of pleasure or displeasure when experiencing prārabdhakarma create new deeds which, like the previous deeds, strive towards maturity and consumption and, thus in turn, become prārabdha or saṃcita-karma. Since prārabdhakarma gives rise to new āgāmyakaram and since a total consumption of the previous karma is not expected due to the stored saṃcitakarma, it is understandable that the doctrine of karmamala practically ends up in the doctrine of a never-ending transmigration." (Sowohl die Betätigung als auch das Lust- oder Unlust-Gefühl bei dem Geniessen des Prārabdhakarma stellen wieder neue Taten dar, die ebenso wie die früheren Taten zur Reife und zum Verzernten drängen, sich also wieder auswachsen zum Prārabdha- bzw. Saṃcitakarma. Da das Prārabdhakarma also neues Āgāmyakarma gebiert, und da wegen des aufgespeicherten Saṃcitakarma ein restloses Verzeihen des früheren Karma nicht zu erwarten ist, ist es begreiflich, dass die Lehre von dem Karmamala praktisch endigt in der Lehre von der nie sich endendenden Seelenwanderung)

85Cf. also an unidentified line in the Śaivaagama-paribhāṣa-mañjarī, op.cit., p. 105 which clearly states: praraṇḍham saṃcitaṁ karmā āgāmi ca tridhā bhavet.

86Compare also what Schomeraus says, op.cit., p. 117, emphasis mine: "How does karma arise? Or, what is the same, how does it step into activity? Strictly speaking, there cannot be a first appearance since it is beginningless, but one can certainly talk about a reappearance." (Wie tritt nun das Karma in Erscheinung, oder was dasselbe ist, in Aktivität? Von einem erstmaligen in Erscheinung Treten kann streng genommen keine Rede sein, da es anfangslos ist, wohl aber von einem wieder in Erscheinung Treten.)

87Compare also the point made by K. Sivarama in his unpublished paper "Treatment of Karma in Śaiva Siddhānta", McMaster University, Canada, p. 6: "Like in the general case of 'bondage' itself, the essence of karma discloses itself but in retrospect, from the perspective of dissolution of Karma."
One has to bear in mind, nonetheless, that the mechanics of kārmava operate in recurrent cycles, see also Schomerus, op. cit., p. 121.

K. Sivaraman, Śaivism in Philosophical Perspective, p. 164.

Ibid., p. 165.

A verse in this commonly used metre is made up of 32 syllables, divided into 8 units (pādas) with each unit consisting of 4 syllables.

It explains the so-called Śivajñānabodham which is taught in the Raurava Āgama: (bodhitam raurava-tantra-antagataṁ śivajñānabodhākhyam upadīṣati), quoted by K. Sivaraman in "The Role of the Śaivāgama in the Emergence of Śaivasiddhānta: A Philosophical Interpretation", P. Slater and D. Wiebe eds., Traditions in Contact and Change (Waterloo: Wilfred Laurier University Press, 1983), p. 55 (translation my own). Cf. the following:

"There exists a work of 12 sūtras, the Śivajñānabodham. This is the fundamental text which is the most important authority in the actual system of the Śivaite philosophy which is called Śaivasiddhānta. Two commentators of these sūtras, Śivārāgoyogin and Sadāśiva Śivācārya, claim that these 12 sūtras are taken from the Rauravāgama. Certain Tamil commentators even claim that it belongs to the 12th adhyāya of the 73rd pāṭala, called pāśavimocana-pāṭala, of the Rauravāgama ... These twelve sūtras do not appear in the abridged version which we are publishing. There is no indication that they could have belonged to this Āgama nor have we yet found a pāṭala called pāśavimocana-pāṭala. Further, it is not usual to find a pāṭala divided into adhyāyas. Finally, the last half-sūka which concludes the Śivajñānabodham declares: "evam vidyāc chivajñānabodhe śayārtanirnīyam" (thus should one know the decision regarding Śivaism in the Śivajñānabodham). From this it seems that it is an independent work. However, it is not possible to have a definite opinion on this point since we do not possess a complete manuscript."

(Il existe une oeuvre de 12 śloka, Śivajñānabodham. C'est le texte fondamental qui fait le plus autorité dans le système actual de philosophie Śivaite appelé Śaivasiddhānta. Or les deux commentateurs de ces sūtra, Śivārāgoyogin et Sadāśiva Śivācārya, prétendent que ces 12 śloka sont tirés du Rauravāgama. Certains commentateurs tamouls prétendent même que cette portion appartient au 12ème adhyāya du 73ème
patala, appelé pasa-vimocana-patala du Rauravāgama. ... Ces douze sutra manquent dans la version abrégée que nous publions. Nulle part il n'est d'indication qu'ils aient pu appartenir à cet āgama et nous n'avons pas davantage trouvé jusqu'ici un patala intitulé pasa-vimocanapatāla. Il n'est pas non plus habituel de trouver dans un patala une division en adhyāya. Enfin, le dernier demi-sloka qui achève le Śivajñānabodha déclare: "evam vidyāc chivajñānabodhe saivārthamirnayam" (qu'ainsi,l'on connaisse la décision sur la connaissance relative au Śivaïsme dans le Śivajñānabodha). Il semble d'après cela, qu'il s'agisse d'une œuvre indépendante. Il n'est cependant pas possible d'avoir sure ce point une opinion définitive tant que nous naurons pas un manuscrit complet en notre possession.)


Composed in the thirteenth century by Meykaṇṭhadeva.

See also K. Sivaraman's paper "The role of the Śaivāgama", op.cit., pp. 57-58: "The question of the relative originality of the Tamil or the Sanskritic versions of the text, ... is not very relevant for this paper. The one point of immediate concern is: What are the formative factors definitive to the structure that is discernibly intrinsic to the text of Śivajñānabodham? This question raises a problem in its own right and again of the kind that seems meaningfully resolvable only when perceived as belonging with the question of understanding." On the basis of the two languages in the Śaiva Siddhānta tradition scholars distinguish Tamil Śaiva Siddhānta from Sanskrit Śaiva Siddhānta. See, for example:

"Like its Sanskrit homonym the Tamil Śaivasiddhānta is based on the Śaiva Āgamas. It also claims to be based on the Vedas. The rigorously organized doctrines which it teaches are very close to those of the Sanskrit Śaiva Siddhānta. But it is distinguished from it on some fundamental points, since it orient itself toward a unitary conception of the supreme principle and the phenomenal world. It does not lose sight of the difference (bheda) which exists between Śiva and the world, but it insists on the absolutely indissoluble character of their union (abheda) and thus proposes the theory of bhedaabheda ("difference and non-difference") which is opposed, likewise, to the dualism of the Sanskrit authors and the absolute monism of Śaṅkara." (Comme son homonyme sanscrit, le caivasiddhānta tamoul se fonde sur les Āgama caivaites. Il prétend aussi se fonder sur les veda. Les doctrines, rigoureusement organisées, qu'il enseigne sont très voisines de celles du caivasiddhānta sanscrit. Mais il s'en sépare
sur quelques points fondamentaux, qu'ass'oriente vers une conception unitaire du principe suprême et du monde phénoménal. Il ne perd pas de vue la différence (bheda) qui existe entre Çiva et le monde, mais il insiste sur le caractère absolument indissoluble de leur union (abheda) et propose ainsi la théorie du bhedabheda ("différence et non-différence"), qui s'oppose également au dualisme des auteurs sanscrits et au monisme absolu de Čaṇkara. Encyclopædia Universalis, 1968 ed., s.v. "Çiva et Çivaïsme", By P-S. Filliozat.

Also:

"Śaivadārśana has doubled itself in the course of its long history. The Sanskrit branch which issued from the Āgamas has continued its straight growth, but with fewer and fewer fruits; and a Tamil branch which, apart from being rooted in a different soil, has detached itself from the principal stem and, without establishing any particular ritual, has expressed its doctrine in a powerful and original form, the one which one knows under the name of Śaiva-Siddhānta (but which we prefer to call Tamil Śaiva-Siddhānta, because the other branch is also a Śaiva-Siddhānta ... However, the tie between the Tamil Śaiva-Siddhānta and the Āgamas has remained very close for a long time. In the 16th century the Tamil commentators of the Siddhiār knew Sanskrit perfectly well; they draw largely from the Āgamas in order to write their treatises and to oppose their adversaries." (Le śaivadārśana en effet s'est dédoublé au cours de sa longue histoire. La branche sanskrite issue des Āgama a continué sa croissance droite, mais en donnant des fruits de plus en plus rares; et une branche tamoule, en partie d'ailleurs enracinée dans un humus différent, s'est détachée du tronc principal et, sans instaurer de rituel particulier, a exprimé sa doctrine sous une forme puissante et originale, celle que l'on connaît sous le nom de Śaiva-Siddhānta (mais que nous préférons nommer Śaiva-Siddhānta tamoul, parce que l'autre branche est aussi un Śaiva-Siddhānta ... Cependent, le lien entre le Śaiva-Siddhānta tamoul et les Āgama est longtemps resté très étroit. Au XVIème siècle, les commentateurs tamouls du Siddhiār connaissent le sanskrit de façon parfaite; ils puisent largement dans les Āgama pour écrire leurs traités et se battre contre leurs adversaires.) Hélène Brunner's article "Importance de la littérature Āgamique" in Indologica Taurinensia, vols. III-IV (Official organ of the International Association of Sanskrit Studies), Proceedings of the Second World Sanskrit Conference (Torino: Instituo di Indologia), p. 114. The present study does not enter into any discussion over the complex issues related to the originality and differences of the so-called two branches of Śaiva Siddhānta, which presupposes a thorough acquaintance with both Sanskrit and Tamil. The issues entailed therein could well be the subject matter of a complete study in
itself. Suffice it for the task at hand to merely indicate an awareness of the ongoing debate represented in the above.


96Although the content of both the Sanskrit and Tamil versions of the Śivajñānabodham is regarded as being semantically identical, textually there are some differences. Compare the translation of the Sanskrit sūtras on pp. 81-82 with the translation of the Tamil text—which comprises the bulk of the book—by Gordon Matthews, Śiva-Śāna-Bōdham (Oxford: University Press, 1948).

97For a comparison of the Śivajñānabodham and the Brahmasūtra, see K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, pp. 35-36.

98A few variant readings may be noted, without alteration to the meaning. Compare verses 4, 9 and 11 supplied in the appendix with the versions in J.M. Nallaswami Pillai, Śivajñāna Siddhiar of Arunādi Śivāchārya (Madras: Meykandan Press, 1913), p. 1vi (of the Introduction).

99See V.A. Devasenapathi, op. cit., p. 9. Śivaśrayogin is perhaps the only Siddhāntin who may be credited with having written in both Sanskrit and Tamil. Although Jñānapraṅkāśar, his younger contemporary, also wrote in Sanskrit, he is, however, referred to as a Śivasamavādin because of his view "that souls at release are equal to Śiva in every respect, a
view which is interesting and ably argued but totally at variance with the Siddhānta," ibid., p. 12.

100 What distinguishes him from the others, e.g., Umāpati (fourteenth century) and Śivajñānayogin (eighteenth century) may be reduced to one fundamental difference: whereas for Śivāgrayogin śīvam is both the material and instrumental cause (upādāna-nimitta-kāraṇa), in his sense of the terms, and reflecting a position which seems to be a qualified vindication of the Śivādvaita standpoint of Śrīkānta (twelfth century), in his commentary of the Brahmasūtra, for Umāpati and Śivajñānayogin, on the other hand, śīvam is only the instrumental cause (kevala-nimitta-kāraṇa). See also K. Sivaraman, Saivism, p. 38. It is stated, ibid., that "Umāpati is aware of the closeness of Śivādvaita to his position and even says that the distinction between the two is only terminological and not conceptual." In the case of Śivāgrayogin it will be seen in his commentary to sūtra 8 of the Śivajñānabodham how he justifies his interpretation of the state of non-difference (ananyatvam) between the ātman and śīvam as one which permits a "slight" (iṣat) difference (bheda): "therefore, that state is one of non-difference, while there is [still] a slight difference." (tasmād-iṣad-bhede saty-abhede-eva tattvam).

101 Krishna Sastri, ed. (Madras: Suryanar Koil Adinam, 1920). Grantha is a script invented by the South Indians in which to write Sanskrit and its similarity to the Tamil script is evident in many letters. The Āgamas, which bear the authoritative status ascribed to the Vedas, have been preserved in the Grantha script. It is only fairly recently, especially through the efforts of the French Institute of Indology in Pondichery, that access to the vast Āgama literature has been facilitated by the publications in the Devanāgarī script.

102 First published in Devanāgarī, H.R. Rangaswamy Iyengar and R. Ramasastri, eds. (Mysore: Government Press, 1950), Oriental Research Institute Publications, Sanskrit series No. 90. Another edition of the text has also been published, with an English translation by S.S. Suryanarayana Sastri, in R. Balasubramanian and V.K.S.N. Raghavan, eds. (Madras: University of Madras, 1982), Madras University Philosophical Series--35. In the preface to this edition, p. iii, it is stated: "The Śaiva-paribhāṣā which is a valuable manual on Śaiva Siddhānta is comparable to Dharmarāja's Vedānta-paribhāṣā of the Advaita school and Śrīnivāsa's Yatindramata-dīpikā of the Viśiṣṭādvaita school."

103 There is no indication which work was undertaken first. In addition to the two works already mentioned (which this
In exegeting the sūtras of the Śivajñānabodham in this work Śivāgrayogin first provides a concise, "short" commentary (saṁgraha-bhāṣya) immediately followed by an expanded, "detail" commentary (vistṛti-bhāṣya), elaborating certain points in greater detail. This method is used for all the twelve sūtras of Śivajñānabodham, except sūtras seven and eleven, where he says that detailed commentaries are not necessary. This study draws chiefly from the former, where all his views are succinctly put. Śivāgrayogin's commentary called Śivāgraha-bhāṣya is hereafter cited as SB.
CHAPTER 2

THE DEFINITIONS OF MAN
2.1 Man and the states of consciousness

In what may be called a phenomenological analysis of different levels or states of human experience Indian thinkers contrast firstly the wakeful state from the sleep state. The state of sleep is further considered as comprising two states, namely, the dream state of sleep (svapna) and the dreamless state of sleep or deep sleep (svāpa or suṣupti). On the basis of an investigation into these states a fourth state (turīya) is inferred and Śaiva Siddhānta, elaborating on the Yoga and Vedānta scheme, acknowledges a fifth state called 'beyond the fourth' (turīyatīta). These states belong to the structure of our active life and constitute the framework of human experience. The phenomenological analysis which leads to the postulation of these five states or levels of experience represents a transcendental reflection of human experience on the basis of which the ātman, characterized as consciousness (cit), is inferred. Before analysing and discussing these states in more detail it will be useful to point out broadly what distinguishes and characterizes each state.

When the entire psycho-physical complex of man is in function the state is called the wakeful state (jāgrat). It is marked by the manifestation of sense organ (indriya) functions together with the functions of the intellect (buddhi), of 'memory' (citta), and of the life breath
(prāṇa)—i.e., the function of the puruṣa-tattva as it evolves and expresses itself in the functions of the karmendriyas, jñānendriyas and the antah-karana—all of which become vehicles for a partial expression of consciousness (cit). The progressive elimination of the function of each of these corresponds to a particular state. Thus, when the functions of all the sense organs are withdrawn and only buddhi, citta, and prāṇa serve to manifest consciousness through their functions, the state is called svapna, the dream state of sleep. When the function of the buddhi is eliminated—in addition to the sense organ functions—and only citta and prāṇa prevail with consciousness, the state is called susupti, the dreamless state of sleep or deep sleep. When the function of the citta is eliminated or inoperative and only the prāṇa manifests consciousness, the state is called turiya or the fourth state. When, finally, the prāṇa is withdrawn and consciousness manifests itself without any aid—and, perhaps, better described as a 'zero manifestation'—the state beyond the fourth, turiyātita, is attained or, rather, 'descended into'.

In the case of the sakala-pāśu, this description needs to be qualified. It was already stated that man, the sakala-pāśu, is a concatenation of ānava, karma, and māyā malam. It is this structure which permits an expression of the ātman as manifested in volition, knowledge, and action.
It was seen how this involved a transition from the ātman's isolated (kevala) state enveloped by ānava-malam, to the sakala state when the ātman, furnished with the instruments and objects of experience, is given a modicum of scope for expression. Further, the transition from the sakala to the śuddha state for which, as will be seen, śivam's power of compassion or grace (anugraha-śakti) is indispensable, is via the kevala state itself. In other words, the ātman's 'journey' involves a transition from kevala to sakala, and from sakala to śuddha via kevala. In the light of what has been said above, the fifth state, turīyātīta, would involve a transition or, rather, a return of the sakala-pāśu to its isolated state as a kevala-pāśu where it is in need of some kind of 'assistance'—and because only śivam can provide it, the assistance is termed grace—on account of the overwhelming power of malam. In the journey to sakala, karman and māyā assist in the expression and manifestation of the ātman, albeit under the spell of ānava-malam. In the journey to the śuddha state the ātman, having successfully and completely exploited the use of karman and māyā, is isolated once again on account of the ānava-malam. In this phase of the journey, which now truly borders on soteriology, the ānava-malam needs to be 'removed'. The ātman is no less incapacitated by ānava at this stage than when previously, through śivam's 'veiled' grace, its journey which marked the transition to the sakala state was
facilitated by karman and māyā-sīvam's 'veiled' grace (tirodhāna) is to be distinguished from 'manifest' grace (anugraha) which helps effect the transition from the sakala to the sūdha state. However, the ānava-malam has now matured, so to speak, through experience (bhoga) in the world. Its 'ripening' which this process of maturation entails, points to a need for the 'plucking' of ānava-malam which, in the nature of the case, is possible only through sīvam's grace (anugraha). A further discussion on this soteriological issue will have to be resumed at a later stage. What is to be noted for the present context is that the five states referred to above finally relate progressively to the isolation of consciousness (cit) from any limiting adjuncts. In the case of the sakala-ṇaśu, however, the states mark a gradual relapse and the fifth state, turīyatīta, is to be seen in the context of the ātman under the complete spell of ānava-malam once again—albeit in a different or reverse 'direction' of the ātman's journey.

For experience in the world the ātman or consciousness as such requires the aid of the indriyas, buddhi, citta, and prāṇa. It is through their role in providing the link between the ātman and the objects of experience that life in the world as we know it is possible. The condition of the ātman's relation to the categories necessary for human experience represents a state of limited
or fettered expression of its powers. In this fettered state the ṛātman, as already seen, is more appropriately called a pāśu and a sakala-pāśu is man in the world of common, everyday experience. The etymological meaning of the word sakala furnishes an important sense of the term, as Śaiva Siddhānta uses it. The word is a compound derived from the preposition sa (meaning together or along with, accompanied by, having, possessing, containing) and the feminine noun kālā (meaning the elements of the gross or material world). The adjective sakala thus means 'consisting of parts', 'possessing all its component parts', 'complete or whole', and in the neuter form, the word means 'affected by the elements of the material world'. It is in this context that the significance of the state in which the sakala-pāśu exists, the sakala-avasthā, has the impact of man's state or condition in undergoing worldly experience. In addition to the etymological meaning of the term, is its technical meaning, and one which is unique to the Āgama use of it, viz., as 'along with' the kālā-tattva.

2.2 Toward a general definition of man

In asking what the nature, characteristic and essence of a sakala-pāśu are, one is in fact asking about a definition of man. What constitutes a definition in the proper sense of the term is a special subject of discussion for Śaiva Siddhānta which has its own slant of defining
terms. It is the Āgamas, and particularly the Śivajñānabodham, which provide the basis for a need to clarify the concept of definition and its function. In this discussion, the strong influence of Nyāya is evident⁵, even if the metaphysical presuppositions of Nyāya realism are not accepted.

In dealing with the question of the definition of the three ultimate categories (padārthas) of reality the Śivajñānabodham serves as the basis for a distinction between two related kinds of definition (lakṣāṇa), viz., a broad, general definition (tattastha-lakṣāṇa) and a specific, essential definition (svarūpa-lakṣāṇa). It may be said that the former is a definition of a property distinct from its essential nature and yet by which the essential nature can indeed be known.⁶ The tattastha-lakṣāṇa may be arrived at through an existential reflection on the nature of things in the world as explained in the scheme of tattvas and this, in turn, serves as the basis for the svarūpa-lakṣāṇa arrived at through a transcendental reflection on what constitutes the essential nature of a category. In the case of what constitutes a complete definition of man, it will be seen in greater detail how, on the one hand, the definition of man generally and broadly is in terms of the being involved in empirical life and how, on the other hand, specifically, intrinsically, and essentially man has to be defined purely in terms of consciousness itself—the latter definition.
being derived, in fact, from the former.

Śivāgrayogin has no difficulty at all as regards entering into a debate on a definition of man. In verse two of the Śivajñānabodham it is declared: "He creates the world for the sake of human beings" (karoti saṁśritim pumsām). Śivāgrayogin inquires into the meaning of this statement and asks: "Who are the beings here for whom this world--from Śiva [tattva], etc. to earth--is produced?" This is Śivāgrayogin's preamble to verse three of the Śivajñānabodham and it evinces the characteristic continuity and flow of his style displayed throughout his commentary. The preamble anticipates his own discussion on the scheme of tattvas, which encompasses man, and says that the answer to the question concerning man is provided in this and in the next verse of the text. The task now, therefore, is to see how verses three and four of the Śivajñānabodham furnish a definition of man in the answer that they are said to give.

Verse three of the text reads:

There is an āpy in the body on account of: [the cognition of] not-thisness; the excess of mineness; there being consciousness [even] when the senses have ceased [functioning, e.g., in the dream state]; [the recollection of] there being no experience in deep sleep; and on account of there being one [an agent] who perceives when awake.

This verse is in the form of an argument with five reasons to validate the view that there is an element or principle which constitutes man's essence and characteristic feature, and in terms of which, it may be anticipated, the definition
of man is to be given. It is in this context that the five reasons given in the verse could well be taken as stages or steps which lead to the idea of the anu. The word anu here is to be taken as a synonym for the ātman because in the following verse four of the text, the subject is the ātman and from the context it is clear that "anu" in verse three is synonymous with "ātman" in verse four. Hence, the anu, which for all practical purposes is now the ātman, is the principle which is constantly aware of, and even makes possible, every physical and psychological experience with which it is invariably connected.

In his commentary to verse three cited above, Śivāgrayogin takes the opportunity to exegete the deliberate use of the third singular form (asti) of the verb 'to be' (as). This he does especially in view of the fact that Sanskrit grammar permits the omission of certain words, which have to be supplied to facilitate an intelligible, contextual reading of a sentence. This practice is particularly common in the case of various forms of the verb 'to be'. The word "asti" in the text is perhaps best rendered here as "there is" or "there exists" and Śivāgrayogin says that the word denotes two significant points: "firstly, [what is] different from the non-existing and, secondly, [what has] an existence undiminished at all times."\textsuperscript{10} Further, it refers to what is always "abiding" (sthāyin). The point of these comments is to draw attention
to a characteristic feature or principle in man which experiences the different states of our existence without modifying itself in undergoing these vacillations.

The significance of the phrase "in the body" in the statement "there is an \textit{a\textnu} in the body" expressed in the verse is to be especially noted insofar as the body cannot be said to constitute the essential feature of man expressed by the term \textit{a\textnu} or \textit{\textatman}. In addition to the five reasons already alluded to above, this point may be taken to be a sixth reason expressed in the verse to validate the postulation of such a principle. The significance of this principle which exists in the body is evident by contrasting it with the five reasons that account for its existence. It is through a detailed consideration of these reasons that a description and definition of man begin to emerge.

The cognition of not-thisness is the first reason stated in the verse. In his commentary on this point, \textit{\textSivagrayogin} uses it as the basis from which to launch an attack on the \textit{\textMadhyamika} doctrine of the void (\textit{\texts\textnyav\textada}). In essence, the attack is short, direct and precise: "Since there is a cognition of the void the \textit{a\textnu}, which is the cognizer, is not non-existent."\textsuperscript{11} In elaborating this basic refutation of \textit{\texts\textnyav\textada} he says:

\begin{quote}
If, for you who speak of the voidness of everything, there be no one who cognises "the pot, etc., is void", then this [cognition] becomes invalid. Therefore, it must be said that there is a cognizer of this [cognition] and not that even this [cognizer] is void since there is no evidence to
that effect. Through self-recognition ... it is not possible to understand voidness in the form of one's own non-existence perceived previously. Moreover, to say "I am not" is a contradiction of activity in oneself.12

When the Siddhāntin says that recognition (pratyabhijñā) is not a means by which to establish the view that everything is void, the point is that even if one were to grant the cognition or experience of the void it still presupposes a recognizer of the recognition or an experiencer of the experience. This point becomes clearer when the same argument is put in other words:

Is there a cognition of the void or not? If not, then it [the cognition of the void] becomes unauthentic. Therefore it must be said that in fact there is this [cognition of the void] and not that this [itself] is void since, in this case, the situation of the non-existence of the void would arise. What does not exist cannot prove non-existence, therefore, it has to be said that there is this [cognition of the void]. This is the ātman for us.13

The strength of this argument is that a cognition of the void cannot itself be the void and if some form of cognition is not acknowledged, then there can be no void to be cognized. The problem entailed in this position is equivalent to what applies in the case of a universal statement in logic, e.g., that 'everything is relative'. This statement itself has to be excluded from the reference to 'everything' for it to have any meaning at all. A similar example is 'everyone is speaking a lie' where the speaker has to be excluded for the sentence to be meaningful. It is in this way that "everything is void"
excludes the cognition of everything as void from itself being void. Some status has to be given to the cognition and this is precisely the point of contention with the Śūnyavādin.14

As a corollary to the refutation of Śūnyavāda, the following emerges: "The word 'not-this' [i.e., the cognition of the void] depends on the intellect which is responsible for this statement, therefore, it [the cognition of the void] is the proof for this [intellect]."15 This point is significant insofar as it points to the 'level' at which the cognition takes place. It is a cognition that is the outcome of the buddhi-vr̥itti, the modification of the intellect, which takes on the mode of the void and cognizes it as such. It is cit-śakti, finally, which makes this possible, albeit delimited by the intellect. The cognition therefore does not take place through cit-śakti per se but through a fettered cit-śakti. What this means is that the cognition of everything being void is but a limited expression of the consciousness which constitutes the essence and characteristic feature of man. To identify a cognition as being that of the void or, in other words, to arrive at a judgement that what was cognized is the void, points to the function of the buddhi in the Śaiva Siddhānta scheme of tattvas. Thus, the view that everything is void—far from referring to the essence of man—is rather a proof, according to the Siddhāntin, for the category of the
intellect.

Further, if the fact of this cognition of the void is not acknowledged, then obviously there cannot be a void to be cognized. This puts into question the validity of the notion of the void itself. The Siddhāntin's conclusion, therefore, is that the essence and defining characteristic of man cannot be in terms of the void.

In exegeting the first reason which establishes the existence of an *ātmā* or *ātman* in the body and in attempting to arrive at a definition of man in a negative way, Śivāgrayogin rejects the position of the Śūnyavādin by arguing that the void can only be intelligible as a cognition of the void. The cognition, further, serves to prove the existence of the intellect which determines the 'object' of cognition which, in the present context, is cognizable as consisting of the absence of any objects. If this void that is cognized were to be taken as constituting man's essence, then the feature of such a cognition would mean that it excludes from its frame of reference a conscious principle which makes such a cognition at all possible. Besides, the fact that the intellect is the instrument of cognition means that one would have to talk of a fettered cognition. In view of these points, it is held that the void cannot constitute the essence of man.

The second reason expressed in the verse which accounts for the view of an essential feature which
constitutes the essence of man is: "on account of the excess of mineness." The compound used here is made up of "mineness" (mamātā) and "on account of the excess of" (udrekāt). Mineness is defined as "the knowledge of the distinction between the ātman and the body in [such statements as] 'this is my body'" and therefore the compound together with 'intensity or excess' (udreka) means "on account of the intensity of this [knowledge]." 16 In the light of this comment the syntax which clearly brings out the impact of this part of the verse would therefore have to read as follows: 'there is an apu in the body on account of the intensity of the knowledge about the distinction between the ātman and the body.' What this means in short is that "on account of the intensity of mineness the apu is not the body." 17 The phrase "in the body" expressed in the verse has therefore to be construed along with "the intensity of mineness." That there is an apu (or ātman) in the body means that it is not the body and this fact can be realized through the intensity or excess of mineness. Statements such as 'this is my body' which express mineness point to a 'my'. An inquiry into the meaning of this word is in fact an investigation into the view that the essence of man is evidently represented by the body.

The question concerning the body, the consciousness that is manifested in it, and consciousness as such is a matter of considerable debate. The question basically is:
is the defining characteristic of man to be given in physical, corporeal terms or in terms of what constitutes the nature of consciousness? Together with others of the same philosophical standpoint on the issue, e.g., the Vedāntins, the Śaiva Siddhāntin launches an attack on the Cārvākas who uphold the view that everything can, and should, be explained only in physical terms. The former who uphold the theory that the essence of man is what is called the ātman, characterized chiefly by consciousness, are called ātmavādins and the latter, called dehātmavādins, hold the view that this essence characterized by consciousness is nothing but the outcome of a particular combination of the elements of the body which vanishes when this combination is disturbed with the death of the body.18

The following, as Śivāgrayogin puts it, is the chief criticism of the Cārvāka against the ātmavādins:

What is the proof for the existence of the ātman apart from the body? Firstly, it is not perception since there is no perception of it and also since the case of the usage of "my body" is the same as "my ātman".19 Nor even can inference be the proof since there is no indicatory mark20 and since there is no difference when the body is posited as that ātman--since it is the locus of consciousness.21 Further, the Cārvāka maintains: "Consciousness [occurs only] in a [particular] conglomeration of elements and there is no occurrence of it in the case of a pot, etc. Since things are transformed into the form of a body, etc., having their own manifold natures, there occurs that [consciousness] inherently."22 Therefore, in the considered
opinion of the Cārvāka, no principle beyond the body need be acknowledged "since, as far as consciousness is concerned, there is the propriety in arguing that the body itself is its inherent cause and [also] the 'reasonable cause'."23

The Siddhāntin's answer to the above argument raised by the Cārvāka is: "The body is not the source (āśraya) of consciousness since it [the body] is an object of enjoyment, or since it undergoes change, like a pot, etc.; [therefore] something apart from it [the body] must be acknowledged."24 The point is that the Siddhāntin who insists, on rational grounds, that the notion of consciousness be accepted, regards it as a permanent, unchanging principle which, as such, is not subject to any essential modification. Moreover, an entity that is subject to change, like the body, cannot be said to be the source of an unchanging principle such as consciousness. It is only when consciousness is associated with, and thereby determined by, the body which it uses that it appears to share the limitations and impermanence of the body. This refutation is on the authority of the Mrigendra Āgama which Śivāgrayogin quotes:

If it is said that it [the body] is conscious (cetana) then, since it is subject to change and since it is an object of use, it can never [itself] be consciousness (cit). A pot, etc., which are devoid of consciousness (cit) are seen to undergo changes and they are also to be used. Even this [body] is verily [like] that [pot].25

This argument is unacceptable to the Cārvāka not
only because it has the form of an inference but also because it contains the fallacy called upādhi. The exact reason for the Cārvāka’s rejection as Śivāgrayogin supposes it to be is: "on account of the [fallacy of] upādhi [contained in] 'not being the source (anāśraya) of the sense organs [of the body]'." Although this reason is not elaborated by Śivāgrayogin—since it seems that he adopts the Nyāya position here—it will be useful to see how exactly it may serve the Cārvāka to reject that argument. It is also necessary, thereby, to see how precisely the Siddhāntin justifies the notion of consciousness (cit) which is supposed to be indispensable toward an understanding and definition of man.

The fallacy contained in the above argument belongs to the kind the Nyāya calls 'unestablished reasoning' (asiddha) and of the three kinds that come under this group, the fallacy in question is termed 'unestablished in respect of its concomitance' (vyāpyatvāsiddha). The technical, and somewhat lengthy, logical explanation given by Nyāya of this kind of unestablished reasoning is:

The reason is said to be vyāpyatvāsiddha when it is associated with an adventitious condition (upādhi). That is said to be an adventitious condition (upādhi), which is pervasive of the probandum [sādhyā] but not pervasive of the probans [sādhana]. 'To be pervasive of the probandum' means 'never to be the counter correlative (pratiyogin) of non-existence (abhāva) which co-exists with the probandum'. 'Not to be pervasive of the probans' means 'being the counter correlative of non-existence which co-exists with the probans'. In the argument —"The mountain has smoke, because it has
fire", contact with wet fuel is the adventitious condition (upādhi). "Where there is smoke, there is contact with wet fuel"—thus it is pervasive of the probandum. There is no contact with wet fuel in every place where there is fire; for instance, a red-hot iron ball has no contact with wet fuel; thus the upādhi is non-pervasive of the probans. In this manner, contact with wet fuel is the upādhi in the present instance, because it is pervasive of the probandum but not pervasive of the probans. And fire, in the argument under reference, is vyāpya-tvāsiddha, since it is associated with an adventitious condition (upādhi).30

In applying this intricate argument to the context of the discussion at hand, the fallacy pointed out by the Cārvāka would be the following: the upādhi 'not being the source of the sense organs of the body' is pervasive of the sādhyā, viz., 'the body is not the source of consciousness', but not of the sādhanā, viz., 'the sense organs are not the source of experience'. In other words, just as one can say 'wherever there is smoke there is contact with wet fuel' and not 'wherever there is fire there is contact with wet fuel' (since a red-hot iron ball has no contact with wet fuel), so too one can say 'wherever there is contact with sense organs there is experience' but not 'wherever there is consciousness there is experience' (since consciousness is never without contact with the body and its organs).

Śivāgrayogin says that it is this very objection raised by the Cārvāka that is refuted when the verse under consideration says "on account of the intensity of mineness" (mamatā-udrekāt). This is to say that the greater the intensity in everyday life of such feelings as 'this
experience is mine' the stronger the impact, by contrast, of its reference to a noncorporeal principle which has such an experience. What is being anticipated here is the Siddhāntin's position that experience is indeed possible through consciousness per se—the so-called experience man has through the body and its organs is but a limited and conditioned experience. The Siddhāntin is philosophically preparing the ground for a case to be made out later, for what is going to be called śiva-bhoga (the experience of śivam or the experience of the transcendent). The word bhoga (experience) without any qualification generally refers to empirical experience that consciousness undergoes using the body and its organs as its instruments. When the word is prefixed by 'śiva', it points to the experience that consciousness has without the restrictions enforced by corporeality. This point will be considered in more detail later. For the present, it is to be noted that the Siddhāntin rejects the Cārvāka contention that the body is the source of consciousness and that with the dissolution of the body at death, consciousness too, ipso facto, is dissolved.

In order to be authoritative in his rejection of the Cārvāka position, and also for the clarity it provides, Śivāgrayogin quotes the Pauṣkara Ṭāgama in the section of his commentary under discussion:

Further, the quality belonging to anything is destroyed with the destruction of the thing, i.e.,
on account of the presence of the opposite condition. O Twice Born Ones, how can it be otherwise? When the body lies there at death, why is consciousness not ascribed to it? That by the presence or absence of which the body undergoes either activity or non-activity, is called "consciousness", which is distinct from the body.  

What is implicit in this argument is the point that just as the body's destruction is evident at its death, so too should the destroyed consciousness—which the Cārvāka sees as belonging to the body—be also perceived with the dead body. This not being the case, consciousness has to be regarded as being undestroyed with the death of the body. Further, since it is not perceivable in the dead body, consciousness has to be seen essentially as being independent of the body. Its presence in the body, without which the body is inoperative, gives the semblance of an unwarranted identity of the two to the point where the death of the one signifies the destruction of the other.

An argument following from the above is that: "if the body itself were associated with the quality of consciousness then with its variation it too [consciousness] would grow or diminish, etc." With this point, Śivāgrayogin takes the Cārvāka standpoint to the absurd, logical conclusion where not only can there be no recognition of someone seen previously, but the one who recognizes cannot be said to be the same person either, i.e., both would have changed in the course of time—with the unrecognizable differences in the physique of both,
there would be a corresponding change, beyond recognition, of the consciousness of each. In view of the fact that the Cārvāka position is inconsistent with common-sense experience, apart from leading to absurd conclusions, the attempt to arrive at a definition of man would have to exclude, in the final analysis, the view which regards consciousness—man's defining, characteristic feature—in terms of what is corporeal or physical which, in fact, are the defining characteristics of insentience (jādatva).

The third reason expressed in the verse which makes out a case for consciousness as such is its presence even when the senses have ceased functioning, e.g., in the dream state. The fact that some cognition does indeed occur in the dream state of sleep, is evident in such statements as 'I saw an elephant in my dream'. This means that there is some source (āśrayatā) of cognition and that there is an 'I' which had such an experience. On account of this it is necessary to acknowledge that there is an ātman even during the dream state. 33 It is noteworthy that the continuity of consciousness into the dream state from the wakeful state is inferred on the basis of a post facto reflection of dream experience. Whereas the analysis of the wakeful state served to refute the contention that the body could be the ātman, the analysis of the dream state, on the other hand, demonstrates that the sense organs—which are not indispensable for cognition—can no less be regarded as
being the ātman because cognition takes place even when they do not function in the dream state. The only difference in the psycho-physical complex of man between these two states is that the operation of the sense organ functions is shut off in the dream state, as also in deep sleep and the other states. The absence of the sense organ functions in the dream state must therefore be said to be responsible for the fact that we do not perceive a dream as a dream during the dream experience.

The transition from the wakeful to the dream state is characterized by the cessation of the sense organ functions in the latter. It is the faculty of memory which accounts for the fact of dream experiences, which are recalled in the wakeful state. In other words, one recalls a dream experience because of the 'traces' it leaves behind just as one recalls a previous experience in ordinary, wakeful life because of the impressions left by such an experience (except, of course, that the dream is not seen as a dream in the dream). What permits the recollection of the experiences in both these cases must be assumed to be one and the same feature or principle in man. In view of the fact that the senses do not function in a dream, they cannot be said to constitute the essence of man characterized as the ātman "because one's own destruction can never be known by oneself." This is to say that if the senses are said to be the ātman one would then have to admit that the
manifestation of the ātman would no longer be possible with the non-functioning of the senses. This would lead to the absurd conclusion of the dream state being identical with death. Therefore, a position which gives any sense of permanency to the sense organs and, thereby, gives to them the status of constituting man's essential, defining characteristic, would have to be rejected.

The fact that a dream is not seen as a dream during the dream experience implies that the object of experience is not experienced as it is (yathā-artha) which, in turn, connotes the operation of 'ignorance' (avidyā, ajñāna). This negative phenomenon tacit in the dream experience cannot be supposed to constitute the nature of the ātman—which in fact makes possible the recollection of the dream as having been a dream. It is necessary to bear in mind what was said earlier: the transition of the causal states from sakala to suddha is via the kevala state which completely hinders the ātman. The transition from one effect state to the other, as from the wakeful to the dream state, therefore constitutes a regressive relapse into the state of complete isolation (kevala). It is for this reason that the transition from one effect state to the other has to be characterized negatively. It is to be noted in this context that, by contrast, the significance of the wakeful state is crucial. Here the ātman has all the instruments of experience in the world at its disposal and
the difference between its essential nature and that of the instruments is more strikingly evident. It is to be acknowledged, nonetheless, that the impact of the relevance of the wakeful state is based on a reflective analysis of all the other effect states in the framework of the causal states of consciousness.36 The exploitation of this insight is a step towards the realization of man's essential nature. This point is concerned more specifically with Śaiva Siddhānta soteriology, which will be taken up in more detail later. What is to be noted in the present context is that in the attempt to arrive at what constitutes a defining, characteristic feature of man's nature, the sense organs and their functions do not qualify. The reason for this was seen in the fact—upon recollection—of dream experiences which take place without the sense organ functions. The verse, therefore, offers scope for a discussion of other possibilities.

The fourth reason stated in the verse under consideration that accounts for the existence of an ātman or ānu characterized by consciousness, is the recollection of the lack of any experience in deep sleep (suṣupti). The fourth state (turīya) and the state beyond the fourth (turīyātīta) are also discussed in this context. If, on the basis of the recollection of dream experience, it follows that the sense organs cannot be regarded as constituting the essence of man then, on the basis of the experience of deep
sleep (which is later recollected), it follows that the intellect (buddhi) cannot be regarded as that either. Although the buddhi is absent in deep sleep, as already pointed out, there is still—in retrospect—the experience of having slept very well. The fact that the experience did indeed take place, clearly evident in the memory of it, points to a principle apart from the buddhi which is aware of the experience. This principle may be thought to be the citta ('memory') or the prāna (life breath), both of which are said to be present in deep sleep. The fact that there is a memory of the experience of deep sleep shows that the citta functioned in that state and the fact that the body did not die proves the function of prāna as well. However, the citta cannot be what constitutes man's essential nature since it is said to be absent in the fourth state (turiya) where there is evidence of the function of prāna alone, as the instrument of consciousness. There is no memory of this state—nor of the fifth—because of the absence of the citta, but the fact that there is an experience of turiya is stated unequivocally in the revealed texts.  

Further, not even prāna can be substituted for consciousness as such because in the state which reveals the intrinsic, essential nature of man, in turiyatīta, prāna is said to be absent. Consciousness is in itself in this state, with not a single trait of any principle which makes it comparable to any one of the other four states.
Consciousness is indeed the single common principle in all the states, except that the complete manifestation of its potency is tarnished, coloured by the other principles with which it comes in contact. In Śivāgrayogin's own words:

The intellect, memory, and the life breath are not the ātman. This is the meaning ultimately, since it is said that these are absent respectively in the state of deep sleep, in the fourth state, and in the state beyond the fourth. Here too [i.e., as in the case of the dream state] their absence is known through the Smṛiti and Agama texts.38

The Pauṣkara Agama which Śivāgrayogin quotes furnishes the reason why these three principles cannot be regarded as constituting the essence of man:

The intellect, etc., do not constitute ātman-ness—on account of the effects of which there is [in fact] a proof for the ātman—because their existence is established on the ground that they are responsible for different effects. Here too, if they are responsible [for the ātman] everything would be one.39

The point here is that each principle such as the buddhi, the citta, etc., has a specific, limited, and clearly defined function which cannot be a substitute for the ātman which, in effect, consolidates the data presented by them. Their very limitation is proof of an all-encompassing principle which coordinates and makes their functions possible. Moreover, if any one of these is substituted for the ātman, there would be no point in referring to the others insofar as these would be encompassed by the one, substituted principle. They are not indispensable for the existence of the ātman, which merely
utilizes them for experience in the world. They, on the other hand, would be inoperative without the presence and power of the ātman; it is because of their close association with the ātman that sentience is erroneously ascribed to them. Further, if any one of these were to be substituted for the ātman, then there would be the problem of distinguishing the function, for example, of the sense organs from that of the internal organs. The conclusion therefore must be that the essence of man is characterized by a conscious principle which, in fact, defines man and which has at its disposal the functions of the sense organs, the intellect, memory, and the life breath.

The fifth reason that is furnished by the verse for such a conscious principle is the fact of there being a perceiver in the wakeful state. In this state there is a stream of cognitions (jñānasantati) evident in the flow of sense perceptions and the awareness of them. It would appear that this very flow is what characterizes the essence of man but, as Śivāgrayogin says, this is precisely what is refuted when the verse speaks of a perceiver in the wakeful state. In his own words:

[Since] it is said [in the verse] that there is a cognizer when one is awake, the word anu is connected with the expression for 'existence at all times'. The anu exists at all times. It is not a stream of momentary cognitions, since immediately after waking up there is an awareness of the things to be done remaining from the previous wakeful state. If the view [were accepted] that the ātman is a stream of cognitions known as ālaya, and which is momentary, then, since the earlier stream is
broken in deep sleep and since the stream that arises after waking is a different stream—and on account of these two streams being different—there would be no connection which may be said to be connected to a single stream.40

What has to be acknowledged, therefore, is that there is an abiding principle not only in the background of the so-called stream of cognitions which is said to be momentary, but also in the different states of experience such as in dream and deep sleep. Such a principle accounts for the 'continuity' of the life of an individual in the different states of consciousness.

In terms of the two kinds of definition already referred to, viz., the broad, general definition (tatastha-lakṣaṇa) and the essential, specific definition (svarūpa-lakṣaṇa), and in view of Śivāgrayogin's statement that verses three and four of the Śivajñānābodham furnish the definition of man, the above discussion is a general definition of man in Śaiva Siddhānta, as derived from the third verse. Put more precisely, this general definition is to be seen in the context of the five reasons which make up the argument for an ātman or ātman which has 'an existence undiminished at all times'. If one takes into consideration the content of the verse alone, then it may be said that the notion of the ātman is presupposed in the argument.

However, on the basis of Śivāgrayogin's commentary on the elements of the argument in the verse, a conscious principle underlying the different levels of experience can be arrived
at rationally, and it is this very principle that is referred to as the ātman in man. It is the cognition of nothing, the intensity of the feeling of mineness, an awareness of what goes on in the wakeful state, etc., that point in a general way to the existence of the ātman; they are indicators, in a broad way, of a principle which makes these experiences possible. The verse does not deal with the specific issue of the ātman itself; it does not provide a definition of its essential nature— which would constitute the essential definition of man. This is left to the next verse to provide, which is considered now in the next section.

2.3 Toward a specific definition of man

It has already been pointed out that in the case of the sakala-pasu the transition from one state of consciousness to the other is finally a regression to the state of isolation (kevala-avasthā) when the ātman is 'once again' completely under the spell of (āpava-)malam. It is at this point in the reflective analysis of the essential nature of man that the efficacy, role, and proof for the existence of malam become most striking and crucial to consider. It is especially noteworthy, therefore, that in commenting on the fourth verse of the Śivajñānabodham— which is supposed to furnish the specific, essential definition (svarūpa-laksāpa) of man characterized as the
ātman--Śivāgrayogin devotes approximately half his commentary on this verse to a discussion on the proof for the existence of mālam and the Śaiva Siddhānta justification for the postulation of such a category. The discussion is in fact necessitated by the appearance of the word in the verse itself--it appears in the second half of the verse and the discussion on it makes up much of the second half of the commentary on it.

As is characteristic of his style, Śivāgrayogin provides the link to his commentary on verse four of the Śivajñānabodham. In summarizing his discussion on the previous verse he says: "It has been said that the internal organs, etc., are not of the nature of the ātman, on account of not continuing in all the states such as deep sleep, etc."41 This point follows from the discussion on the elimination or non-function of certain principles which determine a particular state of consciousness. The internal organs (antah-karāṇas) which Śivāgrayogin refers to here--the word being taken from the fourth verse--represent the intellect (buddhi), the mind (manas), the ego or I-maker (ahānkāra), the five sense organs (jñānendriyas), and the five motor organs (karmendriyas).42 This means, as already seen, that he is referring to the state when the 'memory' (citta) and life breath (prāṇa) prevail with consciousness (cit). But, it may be suggested by a prospective opponent, "not even the ātman exists then, since there can be no proof
III

[for its existence in deep sleep, etc.]."43 Śivāgrayogin says that it is in anticipation of this very doubt that the author of the Śivajñānabodham "establishes the connection [of the ātman] with the five states"44 in the fourth verse which declares that:

The ātman is different from the internal organs also [i.e., apart from citta and prāga] associated [with them, though] like a king with ministers; therefore, it [ātman] exists in the five states having its own knowledge and action restricted by malam.45

What is implicit in Śivāgrayogin's commentary on this verse is the "connection" of the ātman with the five states represented by the "continuity" of life from one situation or experience to another. In his own words, with the help of an analogy, the ātman undergoing the five states may be understood in the following way:

There is a continuity of it [ātman] with the five states on account of the recognition of a single self (eka-ātman) connected with the five states in, for example: "That 'I' who yesterday was without money, is the very 'I' who today is with money".46

The situation of the change of fortune from one day to the next is intended to represent the change and underlying continuity involved in the passage of the ātman through the five states.47 It is in this way that Śivāgrayogin commences with his attempt to extract out of the verse the reason for the existence of the ātman which, in the previous verse, was merely postulated and, thereby, arrives at the essential definition of man.

The question of the ātman experiencing the different
states prompts, even if for argument's sake, an immediate rejection of such a notion. Sivāgrayogin responds to this by referring to the Āgamas which mention categorically the condition of a possibility of liberation from the fettered state of existence which is represented by the experiences of the five states of life in the world: "It is established in the Āgamas that it [ātman] has unbridled [expression of the] powers of knowledge and action in the state of liberation." It follows from this that there is a fettered existence from which the ātman can be freed and, therefore, the entire discussion on the essential nature of the ātman, of man, rests ultimately on the authority of scripture. Whilst the actual nature of the state of liberation is beyond human comprehension—insofar as it falls beyond the range of the categories of our understanding (by presupposing the inefficacy of karman, māyā, and āgava-malam in this state)—and an adequate description (lakṣana) of it impossible, the certainty of the possibility of its experience (anubhava), however, seems to be beyond question. The tradition's contribution toward an understanding of man rests on an appreciation of this basic presupposition.

Sivāgrayogin follows this point with some noteworthy remarks on the power (sakti) of the ātman, i.e., the consciousness intrinsic to the nature of man. His points here are terse and effectively extract the underlying
meaning of the verse. The context is the question of the possibility of śakti being unfettered, which arises over the issue (raised in the verse) of the ātman undergoing the five states. The argument revolves around the origin of śakti.

He says:

It is not proper to regard it [śakti] as being produced [afresh] at that time [of liberation], nor does it come from Īśvara since, in that case, it [unfettered śakti]—which has the form of liberation [itself]—would be non-eternal.51

What this means is that in either of these two cases, i.e., being produced afresh or being derived from Īśvara (pati or the lord), one would have to acknowledge an 'origin' of the śakti in the āyu or ātman at the time of liberation. On the fundamental theory that whatever has an origin must have an end, the absurd situation of an end of liberation would arise. The conclusion is: "And, therefore, it must be said that the āyu has omniscience, etc., [intrinsically]".52

Three terms are significant in grasping the full relevance of this conclusion,53 viz., śakti, mukti, and sarvajñatva. Śakti, as stated above, is of the form of liberation (mukti). This means that the power of consciousness intrinsic to the ātman (ātma-cit-śakti)—which has a fettered expression in man—is fully manifest at the time of liberation. In other words, the attainment of freedom from bondage, from the pāśas which restrict man, is identical with the unfolding of man's essential nature. It is in this sense that śakti, i.e., unfettered (asaṅkucita)
śakti, is of the form of mukti—there being no essential
difference between the two, except that mukti implies a
giving up of, or a liberation from, fetters and śakti
implies the unlimited unfolding and expression of the powers
of consciousness. This is to say that the ātman is now
celebrated as all-knowing, all-pervading, constant, etc. 54
All these points are presupposed in Śivāgrayogin's
conclusion above and if these implicit details are to be
taken with the seriousness they deserve, for the
understanding of man in Śaiva Siddhānta, then the crucial
question now is:

So, since it [ātman] is all-knowing, independent and has
all its 'desires' fulfilled, how [does it undergo] the
five states of dependence 55 or how [does it have] the
experience of objects mixed with the suffering already
talked of? 56

The answer to these questions is the solution to the
problems concerning the human predicament, to man's
situation in a world fraught with experiences of joy and
suffering—both of which being couched ultimately in pain
because of their apparent eternal recurrence. Śivāgrayogin
says that it is in anticipation of these questions and
problems, the verse declares that the ātman is one "having
its own knowledge and action restricted by malam." Taking
into consideration that śakti is not produced anew, is not
produced afresh, at the time of liberation (mukti), the
following has to be acceded to: "Although there is its
[ātman's] power of knowledge and action now [in man's
fettered existence) still, on account of its [śakti's] restrictedness and its parviscience, there occurs non-independence, unfulfilled desires, and the experience of the five states."57 This means that malam has the ability to shroud and restrict the intrinsic powers of consciousness. This ability signifies a certain weakness on the part of the ātman to succumb to the influence of malam. It is this weakness that makes the ātman a paśu and accounts for man's condition in the world, and it is its status as bound and fettered that points to a paśu-pati, a lord of bound beings, capable of operating in this condition with grace.

If, for argument's sake, one were to accept malam's ability to fetter the ātman, then an interesting problem arises, as an opponent could well point out:

Now, this being so [the ātman fettered by malam] there could not, even more so, be its [ātman's] experience of the five states--since it [ātman] is like a stone with the power of knowledge and action obscured [by malam]. Therefore, it [the argument] is [like one] fleeing from a scorpion out of fear and fallen in the mouth of a venomous snake.58

The tone of the opponent's argument, piercing as it is, has a touch of sarcastic humour about it: on the one hand, the Siddhāntin says that the ātman is so shrouded by malam that, being like a stone, it is incapable of coming out of this rut; on the other hand, and under these circumstances, it is stated, further, that the ātman undergoes or experiences the five states. How can there be any experience if at the very outset the ātman's powers are obstructed? Therefore, in
attempting to avoid one difficulty the Siddhāntin gets into another—a case of a philosophical jump from the proverbial pan into the fire. What is implicit in the opponent's retorts is that it would be 'better' for the ātman to remain under the complete spell of malam, rather than have to undergo the experiences of the five states which entail a life of suffering in the world. In that way the ātman would be immune to, or exempted from, a painful existence. It would be like a stone, unaware of everything going on around it—undoubtedly a 'better' condition than a life of suffering. From the opponent's perspective this argument may sound convincing, but it is inadmissible from the Siddhāntin's standpoint. The notion of malam is arrived at from an existential analysis of the human predicament (and acknowledges the gracious role of śivam); the opponent, on the other hand, seems to view the problem, prima facie, only from the point of view of malam's origin. Therefore, according to Śivāgrayogin, there is an anticipatory parry of these issues when the verse says "associated".

The word suggests an object—and from the context such an object would be a counter-correlative (pratiyogin)—from which the ātman is different and to which it is in some kind of relation (sambandha). This object, as implied in the verse, can only be the internal organs (and by extension, citta and prāna as well). In commenting on the relevance of this as an account for life in the world,
Śivāgrayogin says:

This is the sense: the malam [shrouding the ātman] is dispelled little by little, and sometimes, by the internal organs and kala [tattva], etc., which are transformed through modification, into the form of this or that pot, etc., and thus it [ātman] experiences such and such object; in this way there is the possibility of the wakeful and other states.59

This exegesis on the word "associated" (anvita) in the verse may be seen as the origin of the sakala state of the ātman insofar as it presupposes the categories of experience (the evolutes of māyā) which are at the ātman's disposal. The expression of the ātman's powers of knowledge and action (and volition) in the world is commensurate with the degree to which the instruments, such as the internal organs, are able to grasp a particular object. The knowledge of an object is not complete insofar as the knowledge is determined by the ability and function of a particular organ of perception. This limitation is no reflection on the nature of the ātman which only 'associates' with these organs. The ātman is assisted by the organs which serve to dispel the malam and, thereby, make experience in the world possible. Without this assistance (made available through Śivam's grace) the ātman would remain in its forlorn and wretched isolated (kevala) state. It is when each sense is in contact with its respective object of perception, e.g., the ear with sound, the nose with smell, etc., that experience takes place. The senses provide a channel of contact between the ātman and
the object and this contact partially removes the obscuration responsible for the ātman's ignorance concerning the nature of things.

The above points should not give the impression that the ātman's knowledge comes into being in the experience of objects. This would be a contradiction of its essential nature, already seen, as all-knowing (besides, the presupposition of an end to what has a beginning also applies here). It has to be repeated in this context that: "Therefore, it is to be accepted that it [omniscience] is there intrinsically [in the ātman] even during transmigratory existence," and that, as the verse implies, "there is the occurrence of the five states on account of its own knowledge and action being obscured by malam." The way in which this situation is to be understood is analogous to the king associated with ministers, as mentioned in the verse. Stressing the word "associated" (anvita) Śivāgrayogin interprets the compound mantri-bhūpa (minister-king) as mantri-yukto bhūpo, "the king who is joined with ministers."

The significance of this analogy is that the ministers, whilst representing sovereignty, are no reflection on the individual, essential nature of the king himself. In the same way, the organs of the body which function on the authority and power of the ātman, do not intrinsically represent the uniqueness of the ātman's
nature. Both the king and the atman, however, are limited to what 'information' is passed on to them—by the ministers and the organs of the body—in their knowledge of the world. Hence the compound is to be construed as the king and the ministers, to represent the atman and the internal organs, etc.,—the two elements of the conjunction not to be seen as forming a single essential, indivisible unit. The stress on "associated" (anvita) or "joined with" (yukta) brings out this significant semantic difference.

As far as the atman is concerned, the different levels of consciousness, of life in the world—such as what make up dream and deep sleep experiences—are accountable on the theory of the atman's association and dissociation with the sense organs, the intellect, etc., as already seen. The cause for the necessity to undergo such a predicament is attributed to the efficacy of malam, which restricts or fetters the expression of the atman's powers. The question concerning the origin of malam in this context does not satisfactorily explain how the atman comes to be in the weak position of succumbing to malam in the first place—insofar as malam is said to exist with the atman as does verdigris in copper since beginningless time (anādi). It becomes intelligible when approached from the perspective of the human condition in which certain issues, such as dependency and limitedness, are realistically rationalized. Śivāgrayogin attempts to do this when he asks, anticipating
an opponent's retort: "Now, what is the proof for the existence of malam?" 63

The answer to this question from the Śaiva Siddhānta perspective is one which presupposes a recognition of the possibility of liberation (mukti). This point is implicit in the following quotation which also sanctions Śivāgrayogin's question above:

When there is an absence of fetters, what the cause was for dependency must be explained; if [this cause were] natural then the word "liberated" cannot apply with regard to liberated beings. 64

In other words, an explanation is required for the ātman's dependency or bound state. This is to say: why in the first place it was in a condition from which it had to be liberated, is what should be explained. The reason for the need to make explicit this clarification is obvious: "First, there can be no perception such as "I am ignorant" since this non-knowledge cannot be an object [of perception]. Nor even can there be an inference [of malam] since there is no indicatory mark." 65 Non-knowledge or ignorance (ajñāna) is equated with malam here. This implies that since one's ignorance cannot be an object of perception (in which case one would know it) malam--the root cause of ignorance which is thereby essentially identical with malam--cannot be an object of perception either. Further, in the absence of any indicatory mark or sign (liṅga) 66 for malam, one cannot validly infer its existence the way one can, for example, infer fire on the perception of smoke.
Apart from perception and inference Śaiva Siddhānta recognizes a third means of valid knowledge, that of scripture (śabda), which is put into service here. It is on the strength of this authority that it can be said: "Now, paśu's dependence must be due to something [else] since it [dependence] is not natural [to paśu] ..." This sentence ends with the analogy "like a coloured form which has become a pot" (ghaṭa-gata-rakta-rūpavat). The compound is a difficult one to interpret. It seems that the following is the point: a pot made out of a coloured substance limits the substance to the form of the pot. Just as the substance clay is limited and determined by an external cause, e.g., the potter, to a particular form of its manifestation, so too does the ātman become dependent and limited in the expression of its powers on the external cause of malam. Hence, the ātman is made into a paśu as, mutatis mutandis, the substance clay is made into a pot. Śivāgrayogin says that such an argument is not based on 'unestablished reasoning' (asiddha) "since there is a disappearance of dependence in the state of liberation." It is clear from the above, that Śivāgrayogin's discussion on the proof for the existence of malam begins with the view of dependency caused by what is called malam, which is seen as being alien to the nature of the ātman and this position is established ultimately on the authority of scripture. The perspective from which the discussion is
undertaken presupposes a cause for man's life in a transitory world. In this context it can be said without fear of contradiction that:

Thereupon, the involvement in experiences which are impure, closely associated with pain, and lasting for but a moment, is due to something on account of adventitiousness [of the involvement]. Since there must be a cause for the involvement in such experiences, malaness is established on the strength of subject-adjunctness. 72

The argument is an intricate one which presupposes several points. Life in the world as represented in the discussion of the five states of consciousness, mentioned in the verse under consideration, is regarded as a fettered existence. It is couched in suffering because of its seemingly endless recurrence. Since it is assumed that the essential nature of man is limited by and dependent on instruments, such as the organs of the body, for its expression and manifestation, some causative factor needs to be postulated for such a condition. Further, not only is this cause to be seen as being essentially alien to the nature of the ātman in man, but it is also something to be seen as adventitious or added on (āgantuka). 73

The term "subject-adjunctness" (pakṣa-dharmatā) is a logical one that is applied to inferences, a favourite topic of discussion in the Nyāya school. Bearing in mind the stock proposition concerning smoke and fire in the Nyāya view of valid inferential statements, the following is the definition of the term:
"Wherever there is smoke there is fire"—This type of invariable concomitance is vyāpti (co-extension).

Subject-adjunctness (pākṣadharma)$^\text{a}$ consists in the invariable concomitant (vyāpya) [smoke] being present in things like a mountain (denoted by pākṣa or the minor term).\textsuperscript{74}

It is the association of smoke with the mountain that makes the inference about fire a valid one. The smoke is an incidental object, i.e., an adjunct, that 'accompanies' the mountain, viz., the subject, and it is a non-essential attribute as far as the mountain itself is concerned. In applying this definition of subject-adjunctness to Śivāgrayogin's argument above, the following emerges: the involvement in experience or life in the world must have a cause, which is called malam. On the strength of the theory of subject-adjunctness, malam has to be seen as an incidental object, i.e., an adjunct, that 'accompanies' the ātman, viz., the subject, and it must therefore be a non-essential attribute as far as the ātman itself is concerned.

In a footnote to the text, the editor of Śivāgrabhāṣya supplies a clarification which is a noteworthy extension of the above logical points presupposed by Śivāgrayogin. It is also a scholastic defence of Śivāgrayogin's argument. A paraphrase of the editor's enlightening remarks is: it is true that for the existence of a pot one can speak of the potter's wheel, etc., as general causes for the pot, and our (Siddhāntin's) purpose would be served by a general cause for the ātman's
involvement in experiences—viz., by postulating *mālam* as such a cause; but just as a wheel cannot be established as a cause for the pot without the *wheelness* of the wheel, so too the involvement in experiences cannot be established without the *malaness* of *mālam* as its cause. This lucid note is significant, further, not only in accounting for, and thereby proving, the existence of *mālam*, but also for clarifying the sense in which *mālam* is regarded as being eternally existent: when a particular ātman is liberated from *mālam* at the time of liberation (*mukti*) *mālam* exists impotently or uselessly with reference to that particular ātman. It is not any more efficient than a potter's wheel which does not function.

The basic point in Śivāgrayogin's argument for the existence of *mālam* rests on an insight into the nature of man's involvement in the world and the dependence implicit in it. What underlies and is presupposed in the discussion is the unfettered, unlimited expression of the powers of consciousness which, under the present conditions, is given only a modicum of scope for manifestation. On the view that some cause must be seen as responsible for it, the notion of *mālam* is postulated. The validity of its proof--apart from citing scripture as the authority--rests on the acceptance of man's bound condition. In terms of the intricately worked out system of Śaiva Siddhānta categories (*tattvas*), and in terms of what further points are considered in the
proof for the existence of malam, it needs to be shown why
the category malam itself is the sole cause for man's
predicament. Therefore, in continuing his proof for the
existence of malam, Śivāgrayogin justifies why it alone is
this particular cause and not, for example, rāga-tattva, nor
mithyā-ñāna (erroneous knowledge), nor even karman.76

The possibility of rāga-tattva as a substitute for
the role of malam is rejected on the authority of the
Pauśkara Āgama which Śivāgrayogin quotes:

If this [ātman] is not impure how is its involvement
in experiences acquired? If it [the involvement] could exist in a virtuous one then it would also be
in a liberated ātman. If you [in opposition] should say that rāga is the cause for the involvement so
why [should It be caused] by malam then, indeed,
rāga is responsible for the involvement [in
experiences] in a virtuous one. If it [rāga] were
the cause for the involvement even in a virtuous
one, then it would be in a liberated one as well,
there being no difference [between these two]; but
neither Śiva nor the liberated one is involved in
experiences at any time.77

The point in quoting this authority is to express the view
that, indeed, one cannot deny that rāga-tattva is
responsible for man's involvement in experiences in the
world—in fact, this is the very role assigned to this
category in the Śaiva Siddhānta scheme.78 However, truly
virtuous beings are not under its influence, let alone
liberated ones. Conversely, if one were to accept its power
over virtuous ones, then its efficacy would be evident in
liberated ones as well. But this is not the case, as the
authoritative scripture declares. Virtuous and liberated
beings are not involved in experiences in the way in which others are and, hence, rāga-tattva cannot be assigned the function of malam.

Thus far, Śivāgrayogin has accounted for the existence of malam on two grounds. Firstly, on the grounds of dependency, i.e., since independence is the essential feature of the ātman—evident when it is liberated—it means that in the state of bondage dependency obtains and the cause for this must be attributed to malam. Secondly, malam is established on the grounds of the involvement in transitory, worldly experiences which are tinged with suffering. By way of elaborating these two points and by way of an introduction to his rejection of the view that mithyā-jñāna (erroneous knowledge) or karman may be substituted for the role of malam, the discussion now centres around the terms parviscience or limited knowledge (kiñcijñātva) and omniscience or all-knowingness (sarvajñātva). A quotation from the Pauṣkara Āgama establishes the existence of malam as the decisive factor for the significance and distinction between these two concepts:

The ātman is covered by malam, therefore, it has limited knowledge, although omniscient [intrinsically]; whoever is not one who has limited knowledge, is not restricted by malam—like Śiva; therefore, not being such a one, the ātman is covered by malam. 79

In anticipating an opponent's rebuff, Śivāgrayogin points out that this inference based only on negation or negative
data (kevala-vyatireki-anumāna)\(^8\) is unacceptable because, it may be argued, to draw the distinction between parviscience and omniscience is useless (aprayojaka) as regards proving that the ātman's restriction of powers is due to malam (mala-āvṛtatvam prati).\(^8\) The conclusion that can be drawn from this argument is that "the occurrence of limited knowledge is through the restriction [caused] by erroneous knowledge, karman, etc."\(^8\) Śivāgrayogin's task now, therefore, is to consider this objection.

In rejecting erroneous knowledge as a substitute for malam Śivāgrayogin says that it "does not arise when there is a manifestation of objects properly"\(^8\) and, therefore, in the case of sight, for example, something has to be supposed as a cause for shrouded vision, such as a cataract in the eye. Further, this has to be supposed "because erroneous knowledge is temporary and in its absence the situation arises when there is a clear manifestation of everything."\(^8\) This justification of the Siddhāntin's standpoint is an argument based on what is declared in the Pauskara Āgama, which Śivāgrayogin quotes:

> Nor is this [malam to be called] erroneous knowledge because it does not arise of its own accord. The cognition of silver in the shell does not arise without a cataract [in the eye]. Moreover, is this erroneous knowledge adventitious or not? If it were adventitious it can never hinder cit-śakti; if it were not adventitious then it can never be erroneous knowledge.\(^8\)

The point here is that erroneous knowledge and malam are not identical and the function of the one cannot be substituted
for by the other because although erroneous knowledge may be overcome, man's involvement in experience and painful, dependent existence persist.

The last sentence of the above quotation attempts, implicitly, to reject the view that there can be an origin of malam. It is one of the three categories of ultimate reality and exists eternally. Malam, i.e., ḍaṇava-malam, is not adventitious (āgantuka) as karman and māyā are. The latter two are necessary consequents of ḍaṇava-malam, as already seen. If one were to talk of ḍaṇava-malam arising or being born with (sahaja) the ātman since beginningless time (anādi), then there can be no question of it arising and/or disappearing—it exists all the time and karman and māyā serve the purpose only to give the ātman a scope for the expression of its powers, evident in experience. If (āṇava) malam were adventitious, instead, it cannot suddenly restrict the power of consciousness inherent to the ātman (ātma-cit-śakti) which previously was unhindered—in this case the possibility of an end to liberation would be a striking paradox and one which is inadmissible from the Siddhānta perspective (as also with others accepting the possibility of mokṣa). Further, the adventitious categories, karman and māyā, do not restrict the ātman, as already said, but rather aid it. This means that if erroneous knowledge were adventitious it should cause valid knowledge, which is a contradiction in terms. If it were
not adventitious, it would not come and go, as in fact it
does—it would prevail all the time and cease to be
erroneous knowledge insofar as an occasion would never arise
when it would be possible for it to be contrasted with valid
knowledge. In other words, (āpava) malam alone, and not the
erratic and irregular erroneous knowledge, can be the cause
for man's predicament.

Śivāgrayogin now rejects the contention that karman
may be substituted for malam as the agent responsible for
the ātman's limited knowledge (kiñcjñatva). He begins by
making two points: firstly, "by the fact that even karman
has a beginning, it is impossible that it can veil the light
of the ātman which has no beginning" and, secondly, "even
though karman is held responsible for experiences—on the
grounds that it may be justified as being a beginningless
stream—it is impossible that it can veil experiences which
have the form of knowledge." Further, "because it
[karman] is regarded [as being instrumental only] with
categories derived from [śuddha-aśuddha] māyā and since it
is absent in the higher realms, the situation would arise
that these [realms] would be unaffected [by karman]." The
argument here is that if karman were to be accepted as an
agent responsible for restricting the powers of the ātman,
then it would have to operate in all the realms that are
encompassed by the Siddhānta scheme of thirty-six tattvas.
This, however, is not the case with regard to the realm of
śuddha-māyā and, hence, the effect of karman has a limited scope.

This point which argues the view that karman cannot be substituted for by malam is put more precisely when Śivāgrāyogin says: "By bringing about experiences it is accepted that it [karman] is responsible for experiences alone; if it were responsible also for veiling [the powers of the atman], effected by something else, the situation of a confusion of category [functions] would arise." Sivagrayogin quotes five verses from the Pauṣkara Āgama which not only specifically reject karman as a substitute for malam but are noteworthy as an authoritative, summary statement of several points concerning the proof for the existence of malam discussed above:

Not even karman is able to hinder knowledge, O Twice Born Ones, because it has a beginning and it is established that man [is responsible] for the efficacy of karman. Moreover, it is the cause of experiences alone, so how can it hinder experiences? Since there are experiences in the form of knowledge, these cannot be shrouded by this [karman]. Karman has the natures of merit and demerit which are restricted to the intellect [only]. The higher realm [beyond the intellect] is not pervaded [by these two] so how can they cause any hindrance [there]? Moreover, these two are responsible for experiences, so how could they be engaged in [another] activity [such as hindering]? If they are [accepted as being] responsible for activity in one area, then [now] they would be the cause for activity elsewhere too! There can be no such mixing of a category [function], since there is a distinction of their effects. Therefore, it is established that karman cannot cause the hindering of cit-sakti.

After establishing in this way (a) that malam cannot
be substituted for by karman as an agent responsible for the ātman's limited knowledge, chiefly because this role would mean that karman functions beyond its domain and (b) that erroneous knowledge is due to some extraneous cause and, thus, cannot itself be responsible for what in fact causes erroneous knowledge, Śivāgrayogin now deals with the crucial question of the relationship (sambandha) between the ātman and malam. He says that this relationship cannot be one of inherence (samavāya) because if this were accepted, the ātman and malam would become identical ultimately.90 "Nor is the relationship one of veiling because this would depend on another relationship."91 By this is meant the following: if the relationship between the ātman and malam constitutes a veiling (āvāraka), then it presupposes a relationship between malam and the nature of the object that is veiled from the ātman's ability to experience or have the knowledge of. In terms of the Śaiva Siddhānta categories of ultimate reality, this presupposes a relationship between malam and śivam, on the one hand, and between malam and itself, on the other (apart from the one between malam and the ātman). The first relationship is categorically inadmissible because, as already seen, malam and śivam are exclusive categories. The second is impossible because malam is insentient or unconscious (jāda or acit) and there can be no question of it being in any relationship at all—in this sense, strictly speaking, one would have to talk of the ātman being in
relationship with malam and not vice versa. Further, it may be noted that an infinite regress is implicit in the problem of relationship as implicit in Śivāgrayogin's argument here, with one relationship, at least theoretically, leading to another and so on.

The above arguments do not deny that there is indeed some kind of relationship between the ātman and malam. The only question is: what kind of relationship can adequately and rationally account for man's condition in the world, within the framework of the Siddhāntin's philosophical presuppositions? A relationship which is one of inherence or of veiling is rejected for the reasons already pointed out. The rejection is perhaps more striking when seen against the background of the kind of relationship suggested by the Siddhāntin. The conclusion Śivāgrayogin arrives at, therefore, is that the relationship between the ātman and malam must be one of conjunction (saṃyoga).92 This interpretation of the relationship presupposes a disjunction (viyoga). (It may be pointed out here that this view of the relationship between the ātman and malam prepares the philosophical ground on which the condition of a state of liberation becomes possible.) Further, on account of this conjunction, and bearing in mind that the ātman and malam are not identical, malam has to be seen as a substance (dravya).93 Moreover, by the fact that it veils the ātman completely in its state of primordial isolation or bondage
(kevala-avasthā), and in view of its continued relationship with the ātman even in the involvement in experiences of man's life in the world, malam has to be regarded as being all-pervasive. It may be repeated in this context that malam is one of the categories of ultimate reality and, hence, exists eternally. In the state of liberation—marked by the disjunction of the relationship between it and the ātman—malam itself is not destroyed. The relationship between them, however, no longer prevails.

The above arguments lead into Śivāgrayogin's next point, viz., that malam cannot be regarded as being manifold in number but as a single entity. The reason given for this is that it would be a "cumbersome view" (kalpanā-gaurava) to see malam as manifold, even though it is all-pervasive. This reason is not discussed in any detail but it is obvious that the view is a vindication of scripture. He is quick to add, however, that to conceive of malam as a single unit does not mean that when, in the state of liberation, a particular ātman is liberated from malam's restrictive powers that all ātmans are thereby liberated. He anticipates here what is a subject of discussion in his commentary on verse ten of the Śivajñānabodham saying that, in fact, "the liberation of a particular ātman is on account of the removal of the conjunction between it and manas." The word "manas" here is used as a synonym for malam. The commentary on verse ten is mainly about the state of mukti,
the state of the ātman's liberation from the shackles of malam and it may be noted here in anticipation, that Śivāgrayogin says in that context that: "since malam is removed by a direct realization [of the nature of Śīvam] there is no contact [between the ātman and malam]."99

The question concerning the origin of malam—which was seen to be an inadmissible one to ask—can now be modified and put with regard to the origin of the conjunction (saṁyogā) between the ātman and māyā. The answer given is that the conjunction is without a beginning (anādi) because karman, etc., are absent when the contact occurs.100 It has already been seen that the category of time (kāla) operates in close collusion with karman and that both time and karman function only in the realm of śuddha-aśuddha-māyā. When it is said that both of them are absent when the conjunction between the ātman and malam take place, the state of complete isolation (kevala-avasthā) is referred to. It is this condition which leads to the operation of karman and māyā (with time included) as means through which the ātman could manifest itself. Hence, the conjunction takes place 'prior' to the operation of karman and māyā. To regard the conjunction as being beginningless does not mean that it cannot be destroyed101—the conjunction, not malam itself, is destroyed—because it can be said that: "Even though beginningless, there is a destruction through a collection of the apparatus which brings about the
destruction [of the conjunction]." In other words, when the means which bring about the unlimited and unfettered expression of the ātman's powers of volition, knowledge and action are effective, malam's tendency to counter this expression is itself checked, hindered and kept at bay. The possibility of this state of liberation (mukti), to which scripture ultimately testifies, is the proof, finally, of the existence of malam.

2.4 Summary

In the light of the above discussion on the general and specific features concerning the ātman, the following definition of man according to Śaiva Siddhānta may be said to emerge: a bound being (pasu) in the world implicitly expressing and manifesting an ātman with the aid of the instruments of the body, and a being that is characterized by consciousness as its intrinsic, essential nature. The cause for the bound state was attributed to the efficacy of malam. Any discussion on the nature of the ātman would have to consider seriously the ātman's association or conjunction with malam—a conjunction that is said to have been there since beginningless time (anādi), to the point that a definition of man would also encompass a definition of malam. The crucial issue here is that malam is not to be seen as being innate or intrinsic to the nature of the ātman. The question of malam's origin is to be seen, as
already pointed out, from the effects that the association causes, namely, man's dependent existence (paratantryam) with the evidence of limited knowledge (kiñcijñatva). It is necessary to emphasize this perspective to the question concerning malam in order to appreciate the Siddhāntin's philosophical justification for postulating such a category.

Further, the Śaiva Siddhānta understanding of man may be said to commence with an analysis of the condition in which, endowed with the faculties of volition, cognition, and action—all of which are intrinsic to man as powers of consciousness (cit-śakti)—man experiences the joys and sufferings of life in the world. Life in the world, which constitutes an involvement (āsakti) in experiences, is a limited and fettered expression of man's potential powers of consciousness and, in this sense, life in the world is one which tacitly constitutes suffering (duśkha). The condition of the possibility of man being a liberated being (muktātman) points to the means which make such a state a reality. These means represent, basically, an effort on the part of man to see things "as they are" (yathā-artha), which means the conscious effort to realize the natures of the categories of ultimate reality, namely, śivam, ātman, and malam. Thus, man's endowment of the instruments of experience for life in the world involves both negative and positive aspects: the instruments make possible a limited expression of the consciousness which is man's essence and
this, by contrast, implies the need to 'overcome' the dependency and limited knowledge effected by malam.

By way of elaborating the attempt to arrive toward an understanding of man in Śaiva Siddhānta, it is necessary to consider how the instruments of experience, which are at man's disposal, are employed in life in the world. Perhaps the most striking way in which these instruments are employed, is in the exploration of man's role as the cognizer and verifier of valid knowledge. This involves an analysis of the epistemological aspects of man's involvement in experiences. These have to be considered insofar as they constitute an attempt to gain knowledge of 'things as they are', and are indispensable toward an understanding of man in Śaiva Siddhānta.
NOTES

1See, for example, the following three references to sleep in the Yogastūtras: "Sources-of-valid-ideas and misconceptions and predicate relations and sleep and memory" (1,6); "Sleep is a fluctuation [of mind-stuff] supported by the cause (pratyaya, that is tamas) of the [transient] negation [of the waking and the dreaming fluctuations]" (1,10); "Or [the mind stuff reaches the stable state] by having as the supporting-object a perception in dream or in sleep" (1,38). All translations are quoted exactly, including the parentheses, from J.H. Woods, (trans.), The Yoga-System of Patañjali (Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1966; reprint ed., Harvard University Press, The Harvard Oriental Series, vol. 17, n.d.), pp. 19, 29, and 76 respectively.

2Although Patañjali does not use the word turīya in any of his sūtras, there is a reference to it in Vācaspati Miśra's commentary to Yogasūtra 1:38, see Woods, op.cit., pp. 76-77.

3Transcendentally, however, the order is different in that the attainment of the śuddha state is seen as the state in which the ātman regains its pristine purity.

4M. Monier-Williams, op.cit., p. 1124 where the derivation of the word is given.

5For example, in accepting the Nyāya emphasis that a definition should not contain the faults of over-applicability (ativyāpti), partial inapplicability (avyāpti), and total inapplicability (asambhava). The following is a concise clarification of these defects: "A definition, that is too wide and that consists of an attribute which is present in the things sought to be defined as well as those not to be defined, has the defect of ativyāpti; while a definition which does not apply to some of the things defined has the defect of avyāpti; and one which is wholly inapplicable to any of the things defined has the defect of asambhava." S. Kuppuswami Sastri, A Primer of Indian Logic According to Annambhāṭṭa's Tarkasamgraha, 3rd ed. (Madras: The Kuppuswami Sastri Research Institute, 1961), pp. 10-11.

6See also K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, p. 130: "The tātasthalakṣaṇa may only define the 'that' and not the 'what' of Śiva."

7The subject refers to "kartā" in verse one of the text, i.e., the agent who, having destroyed the world, creates it again.
For the entire verse and for any future reference to the Śivajñānabodham, see Appendix 2 which contains all the verses. In exegeting the word puṁsām Śivāgrayogin says: "by the word puṁs only anu is always meant" (puṁsābdena ca-anu-mātrām sarvam-ucyate). What this means is that the word for 'human being' in the context here would have to be taken as a synonym for all living beings in the world. The particular use of the word puṁs, nonetheless, needs to be noted, especially since the word in the masculine form means: "the qualities of man as dependent on the acts done in a previous existence," M. Monier-Williams, op. cit., p. 603.

Tatra ko-vā puṁān yasya-eśā śiva-ādy-avani-paryantā samśrītiḥ sambhāvayeta, SB, p. 261

Asti-sabd'o'bad-vyāvṛitti-paro'sahkucita-sārva-kālika-astitva-paraś-ca, SB, p. 262.

Śūnya-pratipatteḥ pratipattā'ṇur-na-asann-iti. Ibid.


Idānim na-aham-asmi-iti sva-ātmani kriya-virodhas-ā. Ibid.

Yadvā śūnya-pratipattir-asti na-vā. Yadi na-asti tadā tasya-aprāmāṇikatva-āpattiḥ. Tathā ca sā asti-iti vācyam. Na ca sā-api-śūnya tathātve śūnya-asiddhi-prasahgāt. Na ny-asatyā'siddhām śādhyata iti sā sati-iti vācyā. Sā-eva-asmākam-ātma-iti. SB, p. 262. The editor of the text offers a clarification in a footnote on the word ātman here. He begins by asking the question: "Now, can it be said that the cognition of the voidness of everything is the ātman for us? If it is said that [it contradicts our view that] the ātman is indeed the cognizer [i.e., not the void that is cognized] then it is not so since, from what we have already said, it is possible to refute your [śūnya] doctrine even by adopting the Advaitin's standpoint. For us, too, knowledge (citti) is itself of the nature of the ātman, since it is acknowledged [by us] that there is a manifestation of the non-existence of everything in deep sleep." (Nanu sarva-śūnyatva-pratipattir-eva-asmākam-ātmeti katham-ucyate. Pratipattaiya khālv-ātmeti cen-na. Tasya prathamam-evoktatvena-advaiti-matam-ādaya-āpi vādi-nigraha-sambhāvāt. Sva-mate'yā-ātma-rūpa-cittyaiśa suaṣuptau sarva-viśaya-abhāva-prakāśa-abhyagamāc-ca.) The editor seems to be anticipating the discussion on the meaning of the words "bodhe bodhiṇītyāt" (on account of being one who perceives when awake) which is the fifth reason arguing for the
existence of the ātman, expressed in the third verse of the Śivajñānabodham. It is only through a close inspection (anusandāna) in the wakeful state that one can say, on recollection, that one slept well and that one did not remember anything at all. This is the only valid means for the view that in deep sleep there is a cognition of nothing, or the void, which is recalled by the cognizer in the wakeful state. The cognition of nothing in deep sleep is comparable to the cognition, for example, of the absence of a pot in the wakeful state, except that in the former there is no immediate awareness that there is indeed a cognition of the absence of any object. It may be noted that whereas for the Advaitin even the cognition of a pot at the empirical level is ultimately unreal insofar as it is a case of superimposition (adhyāsa) on the ultimately real brahman of what is alien to its nature (cf., e.g., the rope-snake analogy—the perception of the void, too, would be a case in point of being under the influence of māya), for the Siddhāntin, on the other hand, the world is real and what is perceived during the wakeful state does not have an 'illusory' status insofar as both the world and the ātmans share the status of being two of the three categories of ultimate reality (the void that is cognized would have the 'real' status as that of the perception of nothing and the Siddhāntin uses this argument, as seen, to justify the existence of a cognizer, namely, the ātman).

14See also K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, p. 284: "...selfhood is involved in the very act of the denial of the self."


16Mamata mamedam śarı́ram-iti śarı́ra-ātma-bheda-buddhiḥ tasyā udrekat. SB, p. 261. The impact of the word udrekat is significantly made stronger by the three synonyms used to clarify it, in the same place: adhikyāt, adhika-baltvāt, and bhuyastvāt.

17Mamatodredkān-na-deho'nu-r-iti sambandhaḥ. SB, p. 264. The word anu here has to be construed as a synonym for the ātman.

18Deha-ātmavādins are generally considered to be a section of Āryakaś who hold the view that the ātman is the body. Other varieties of the Āryakaś brand of Indian materialism include those who regard the sense organs (indriyas) as the ātman, those who identify life breath (prāṇa) with the ātman, and those who see no difference between the mind (manas) and the ātman. For an excellent brief survey of these, see G. Kaviraj, Aspects of Indian Philosophy (Burdwan: University of Burdwan, 1966) pp. 62-71.
The point here is that, for the Carvaka, there is no difference between saying 'this is my body' and 'this is my atman'; if any distinction is maintained, then there arises the absurd situation of the atman being different from what is denoted by the word 'my'.

According to the strictly logical approach of Nyaya a valid inference must possess an indicatory mark (lihga). Thus, for example, in the proposition 'there is fire because there is smoke' smoke is the lihga, the invariable mark or sign which, on the basis of perception, proves the existence of fire. It is the absence of such a sign for the atman that the Carvaka is referring to here.


...caitanyakam prati klīpta-hetu-bhāvasya dehasyaiva samavāyitva-kalpanautcapita. Ibid.


An inference not verifiable concretely by perception, is unacceptable to the Carvaka, for whom perception is the only ultimately valid means of knowledge. Since consciousness cannot be perceived in a dead body--having been dissolved with the death of the body--it must be regarded as non-existent. For the Carvaka, consciousness emerges through the mere conglomeration, in a specifically balanced order, of the elements which make up the body. At death this balance is disrupted and consciousness vanishes. See especially, S. Radhakrishnan and C.A. Moore (eds.), A Source Book in Indian Philosophy (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1957), pp. 227-249, and K.K. Mittal, Materialism in Indian Thought (New Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal Publishers, 1974), pp. 22-63.

Indriya-anāśrayatvasyopādhitvāt. SB, p. 264.
28 There are five kinds of fallacious reasons or 'semblances of reason' (hetvābhāsah) according to the Nyāya logician Annambhaṭṭa, in his Tarkasāṅghraha, section 36 which deals with inference: "the reason that strays away (savyabhicāra), the adverse reason (viruddha), the opposable reason (sathpratipaksā), the unestablished reason (asiddha), and the stultified reason (bādhita)." S. Kuppuswami Sastri, op. cit., p. 235.

29 The three kinds of unestablished reason (asiddha) are: "unestablished in respect of abode (āśrayasiddha), unestablished in respect of itself (śvarūpasiddha), and unestablished in respect of its concomitance (vyāpyatvā-siddha)." Ibid., p. 237.

30 Ibid., pp. 238-239.


32 Dehasyaiva caitanya-guṇa-yogitve tasyopacaya-apacaya-ādinā bhedena ... SB, p. 265.

33 Āsta svapne gajam-ahāṁ paśyāmi-iti jñāna-āśrayatayā'ham-tv-ena ca-anubhavād-aṇuḥ. SB, p. 266.

34 Na-hi sva-ātma-vināśāḥ svena jñātum śakyate. Ibid.

35 This point excepts the theory, which the tradition accepts, of the extraordinary experience of divine or transcendental communication, be it in a dream or in any other state of consciousness.

36 The importance of the wakeful state can hardly be over-emphasized insofar as the austerities (sādhanas) that are recommended for the conscious striving towards the understanding of the nature of the ātman, have to be practiced in the wakeful state. Also, the liberated being still in the world (jīvanmukta) is in a level or state that is compared to the wakeful one; see, for example, Brahmasūtra IV.iv.14, bhāve jāgrat- vat which is translated as: "When the finally released Jīva-Self, is in an embodied condition, it is, as it is, in a waking condition." V.M. Apte (trans.), Brahma-Sūtra Śāṅkara-Bhāṣya (Bombay: Popular Book Depot, 1960), p. 863.

37 See below for Śivāgrayogin's explanation based on the Pauṣkara Āgama which he quotes.


42See Chapter 1, p. 40 above and the appendix for their postions in the scheme of tāttvas.

43Nanv-ātma'pi tadānāṁ na-asty-eva pramāṇa-abhāvaḥ ... SB, p. 291.

44... ity-āśākhya-avastā-pancaka-anusūṭīṁ pratiṣayati. Ibid.

45See the appendix for the Sanskrit.

46Ya eva-aham pūrvedyur nirdhana āsaṁ sa eva-aham-adya sadhano bhavāmi-ity-avastā-pancaka-anusūṭāika-ātma pratyabhijñānād-avastā-pancaka-anusūṭatvāṁ tasyeti bhāvaḥ. Ibid.

47The analogy is inadequate if one compares the state of fortune with the unfortunate, isolated (kevala) state that the sakala-pāṣu ultimately experiences.

48Nanu pañca-avastā-anubhave-sasya na saṁbhavati. SB, p. 291.

49... muktau tasya-asaṅkucita-jñāna-kriyā-śaktir-āgama-siddhā. Ibid.

50For a detailed discussion, see the section on scripture as a valid means of knowledge, chapter 3, p. 197 below.
51 Na ca sā tadānim-utpadyate īśvarāt-saṁkramati-iti vā kalpayitum yuktam. Mokṣa-rūpayaḥ-tasya anityatva-prasaṅgāt. Ibid.

52 Tathā ca sarvajñatva-ādikam-apy-aṇor-asti-iti vācyam. Ibid. In a footnote to the text, the editor gives an alternate reading of this line (apparently from another MS of the text): Tathā ca sedanīm-apy-aṇor-asti-iti paṭhaṅtaram. "Therefore, it [that power (sā)] is there even now [in the bound state]." The second reading makes more explicit the point that there is no origin of sakti but that it exists as part of the intrinsic nature of the ātman.

53 Between the two cases mentioned in note 51 above and the conclusion in the next note is a sentence about a refutation to be made later on concerning the view that sakti is produced or comes from some other source. It is noted here only to point out that the discussion is not in any way altered.

54 See chapter 1 p. 15 above with a quotation from the Śivayogaratna and the note to it, 47, with a quotation from the Mṛigendra Agama.

55 In explaining this compound, viz., paratantra-pañca-avasthā (the five states of dependence), the editor of the text suggests in a footnote that it should be construed as: paratantrasya yā pañca-avasthā tad-anubhava ity-arthaḥ ("the one who is dependent is the one who has the five states—the experience of this, is the meaning [of the compound]"). SB, p. 292.


58 Nanv-evam sutarām pañca-avasthā'nuḥbhavas-tasya na syāt ruddha-jñāna-kriyā-śaktitvena pāśāṇa-tulyatvāt. Tathā ca vṛścika-bhyāt paḷāyamāsya-aśiṣīṣa-mukha-nilātaḥ ... Ibid.

59 Tathā ca tat-tat ghaṭa-ādy-ākāra-vṛitti-parināta-antaḥ- karaṇena kalā-ādīnā ca kadācit kiṃcit kiṃcid-vidārita-malas- tam-tam-anubhavati-iti jāgara-ādy-upapattir-iti bhāvaḥ. Ibid.
60 Atas-svābhāvikatayā sahsāra-dāśāyām-apy-asti-ity-abhyupeyam. SB, p. 293

61 Mala-ruddha-sva-dṛk-kriyatvāt avasthā-pañcakopeta-iti. Ibid.

62 Mantri-yukto bhūpo mantri-bhūpa iti. Ibid. Śivāgrayogīn interprets this compound as a madhyama-pada-lopī-sanāsa, a compound which omits the middle member. The stock example of such a compound is śāka-pārthiva, the king of an era, which is an abbreviation for śāka-priya-pārthiva, the king dear to the era. The word śāka also means "vegetable" and there is no grammatical difference in the use of the compound to read it as "the king fond of vegetables."

63 Nanu mala-sad-bhāve kim mānam. SB, p. 295.

64 Pāśa-abhāve pāratantryām vaktavyām kim nibandhanam / Svābhāvikām cen-muktesu mukta-sābdo nivartate // Mrigendra Āgama, 7:2, quoted in SB, p. 295.

65 Na tāvad-ajño'smi-ity-ādi pratyakṣām tasya jñāna-abhāva-viṣayatvāt. Na-apy-anumānam liṅga-abhāvāt. SB, p. 295. See also note 20 above.

66 See note 20 above.

67 The three means of valid knowledge are discussed in the chapter on prāmāṇyavāda.

68 Nanu pāsoḥ pāratantryām kiṃcid-āyatām avsābhāvikatvāt ... SB, p. 295.

69 See p. 97 above.

70 Na ca-asiddhiḥ. Muktātā-daśāyām pāratantrya-adarśanāt. Ibid.

71 Whilst scripture is the final authority, the role of inference is also implicit in it. In this context the sign or indicator mark (liṅga)—without which there can be no valid inferential statements—which, for Śivāgrayogīn, is a statement based on scriptural authority, is the following reason (hetu) which validates his argument based on inference: "since there is a disappearance of dependence in the state of liberation." See the above note for the Sanskrit and reference.

This term is not to be confused with the same used for karman and māyā as adventitious (āgantuka) malam. The malam referred to in the context under discussion is ānava-malam which is sahaja-malam, because it is "born with" the ātman. The term āgantuka here refers to the 'association' of ānava with the ātman. In this sense, it is "added on" or incidental to the ātman.

S. Kuppuswami Sastri, Indian Logic, p. 189.


In his Śaivaparibhāṣā he rejects, in addition, the suggestion that māyā and the body could be substitutes for the role of malam, Iyengar and Ramasastri, eds., (Mysore: Oriental Research Institute, 1950), pp. 76-77. The main point in the rejection of these—viz., that each is responsible for effects different from what ānava-malam is supposed to be responsible for—is implicit in the Śivāgrahbāṣya discussion, and need not be dealt with in particular, especially since Śivāgrayogin himself does not consider them here.


See chapter 1, p. 35 above.

The logical explanation and example of such a kind of inference defined by Nyāya, is the syllogism: "Earth is different from the rest (not-earth), for it has smell; whichever is not different from the rest (not-earth) has no smell, as water; this (earth) is not so—i.e., it does not have the absence of smell or gandhabhāva, with which the absence of difference from not-earth (prthivitarabhedābhāva) is invariably concomitant (vyāpya); therefore, it is not so—i.e., it is not devoid of difference from non-earth." S. Kuppuswami Sastri, Indian Logic, p. 233.

SB, p. 296.
82Mithya-jñāna-karma-ādi-niruddhatvena kīcchij-jñatva-upapatteḥ... Ibid.

83Mithya-jñānasya yathā-vad-artha-prakāṣe'nupattyā... Ibid.

84...mithya-jñānasya kādācitkatvena tad-abhāva-daśāyām sarvasya-āpi prakāśa-prasāṅgāca-ca. Ibid.


86Karmano'py-ādi-mattvena-anādy-ātma-prakāśa-āvāraṇatvya- ayogāt pravāha-anāditvena tad-upapattāv-āpi karmaño bhoga- hetutve jñāna-ātma-bhoga-āvāraṇatva-ayogāt. SB, p. 296. The reference to the beginninglessness of ānava-malam needs to be seen in the context of the isolated (kevala) state when the ātman is without kārma and māyā.

87Māyeya-tattva-buddhigatasya tasya tad-ūrdhva-bhuvana- gatēv-abhēvena teśām-anāvītattva-prasāṅgāc-ca. Ibid.

88Bhoga-hetutvenaiva klīiptatayā taj-jananena-anyathā- siddhāsya-āvaraṇām praty-āpi hetutve tattva-sāṅkarya- prasāṅgāc-ca. Ibid.


90Tasya ca-ātmanā sambandho na samavāyaḥ tat-sattve tādātmya-prasāṅgat. Ibid., p. 297.

91Na ca-āvāraṇatvam-eva sambandhaḥ tasya sambandha-antara- āyatattvāt. Ibid.

92See next note for the Sanskrit.

Vyāpaka-ācchādakatayā vyāpaketvam. Ibid.

Nānātve kalpanā-gauravād-ekatvam ca-abhyupeyam. Ibid.

See, for example, the following from the Mṛigendra Āgama, op. cit., 7:8 and 7:10, p. 202 and p. 204:

"That [malam] is one for all beings, it is beginningless, dense, and great. Residing in each ātman, it possesses manifold saktis which perish when their time comes to an end." (Tad-ekāṁ sarva-bhūtānām-anādi-nīdiṇām mahat / Praty- ātma-stha-sva-kāla-anta-apāyi-sākti-samūhavat //).

"That [malam] is single; if it were several [these] would be produced like such things [resembling them]. But, since there is no appearance of liberation simultaneously [for all ātmans], it has several saktis." (Tad-ekāṁ bahu-sāṅkhyaṁ tu tādīṣīg-utpattimad-yatāḥ / Kiṁtu tāc-chaktayo naikā yugapan-mukty-adarśanāt //).

Na caivam-ekasya muktau sarveṣām muktis-syād-iti vācyam. SB, p. 297.

Vastu-tas-tu tat-tad-ātma-manas-sāhyoga-nāśat-tasya tasya muktir-iti daśame vakṣyate. Ibid.

Tatra malasya tāvat sākṣātkāreṇa-apaśāritavād-asamāsparaśaḥ. SB, p. 461.


Na caivam tasya vināśo na syāt anādītvād-iti vācyam. Ibid.

Anāditve'pi vināśaka-sāmagrī -samavadhānena vināśa- upapatteḥ. Ibid.

Śivāgrayogin does not mention here what exactly these means are, but he refers obviously to the religious discipline (sādhanā) of supreme devotion to Śiva. Refer, for example, to verse ten of the Śivajñānabodham in the appendix, the end of which reads: "supreme devotion should be had for this one [Śiva] who is the ātman's aid."
CHAPTER 3

MAN AS A COGNITIVE BEING
3.1 Cit-ṣakti as the only means of valid cognition

Early in the history of Indian thought consistent attention has been paid to what exactly constitutes cognition, the means of cognition, and the validity of cognition.¹ This epistemological concern—which constitutes logical reasoning (tarka)—while attempting to provide the basis for an intelligible discourse on matters of common, everyday experience, served the purpose finally, albeit even indirectly, of distinguishing it from what constitutes the knowledge of ultimate reality, or of indicating how it could yield a knowledge of one's own essential nature. In this sense, the concern with epistemology in Indian thought may be said to represent a philosophy of being and knowing involving, thereby, the metaphysical concern implicit in epistemology, where the empirical subject-object distinction ceases to be viewed as also reflecting ultimate reality.²

In other words, one may speak of a two-fold function in the Indian concern with epistemology: a concern which is closely connected with what comes under the general theme of cognition, and a concern—on the basis of the 'validity' of cognition—with knowledge as such. Both these concerns involve an experience (anubhava, bhoga) as a consequence of man's involvement in the world. In terms of the twofold function of Indian epistemology, a distinction may be drawn between 'cognition-experience' and 'knowledge-experience'. The former may be said to be the contact which takes place
between an object and a subject through the means of the senses, leading to such experiences as listening, tasting, touching, etc. Cognition in this sense would encompass inference, verbal testimony, and other means of cognition. The latter, on the one hand, may be equated with valid cognition-experience, as when one knows the reality of an object through a perception of it (in which case error, illusion, etc., are ruled out) and, on the other hand, it would involve an experience, for example, of one's nature not derived through the usual means of valid cognition. Knowledge in the latter sense, as will be seen, would also preeminently include an experience that can be described as intuitive, transcendental, or religious, without the distinction between a subject and an object which characterizes cognition. At the empirical level, therefore, knowledge may be said to involve cognition but not vice versa—i.e., cognition—insofar as it could be false or erroneous—does not necessarily involve or assume the status of knowledge.

The above distinction is assumed in the discussions concerning the cognition of objects and the knowledge of ultimate reality, and the distinction is implicit in the terms pramā and jñāna. These terms are often loosely taken to mean 'knowledge' but in the light of what has been said above, pramā is more correctly rendered as 'cognition' since it presupposes a means of cognition, i.e., a pramāṇa. In
the case of jñāna, in the sense of the knowledge of ultimate reality, a means is indeed acknowledged, namely, a sādhana, but in the context here this represents a special yogic attitude of contemplation or meditation on the nature of reality as such. Several schools of Indian thought (e.g., Śaiva Siddhānta and the schools of Vedānta) agree that the experience which is a knowledge of ultimate reality—referred to as śivajñāna or brahmajñāna—cannot be had through any means of cognition (pramāṇa), though it may indirectly help in bringing this about (as will be seen in more detail shortly).  

In the concern with theories of cognition, one can discern two broad trends in Indian philosophy: the theory of intrinsic validity (svatah-prāmāṇyavāda) and the theory of extrinsic validity (paratah-prāmāṇyavāda). The adherents of the former are, for example, the Mīmāṃsakas, Vedāntins, and Śaiva Siddhāntins. For them, valid cognition, i.e., empirical knowledge, is true by its very nature and the so-called erroneous nature or invalidity of knowledge is due to some defect in the means or source of cognition (karapa doṣa), e.g., defective eyesight. Thus, one cannot speak of 'false knowledge' but rather of an error in the means through which cognition takes place. This view is opposed to the latter theory of extrinsic validity, propounded by the Nyāya school, where an extraneous factor or condition needs to be fulfilled in the origin (utpattau) or the
ascertaintment (jñāptau) of cognition to establish its validity.7

The fundamental question underlying epistemology (prāmānyavāda) in both these trends concerns what precisely constitutes the valid means of cognition, i.e., pramāṇa. In the epistemological context this term has implicit in it three cognate words, all of which are derived from the root mā prefixed by pra: prameya or the object of cognition, pramā or pramiti which is the cognition itself, and the pramātri or the subject, who is the cognizer. The verb pramā itself means several things: to measure, to mete out, to estimate, to arrange, to form a correct notion of something, to understand or to know.8 The causative form of the verb, pramāpayati, meaning 'to cause correct knowledge, afford proof or authority', brings out the epistemological sense of the means (pramāṇa) as the right measure, the standard or authority of the means of pramā, the correct notion, true knowledge or valid cognition.9

In rationalizing what exactly may be called a pramāṇa (a means of valid cognition) the Siddhāntin says:

That without which there is no valid cognition of any object whatever, that alone is to be acknowledged as the valid means of cognition, and sight, etc., are not such [valid means].10

This conclusion is based on the logical assumption that:

Whatever is an object of cognition is not a means of cognition, since it [the object] is cognized through some means.11

This insightful conclusion, which is unique to Śaiva
Siddhānta, seems contrary to what is generally accepted as being a possible means of valid cognition, viz., perception, which is acknowledged by all schools which deal with epistemology, and an explanation is necessary for the precise sense in which the Siddhāntin maintains this position. The reason is twofold. Firstly, as stated above, whatever is a means of cognition is not an object of cognition and since the senses can be objects (i.e., of an 'inner' perception, as will be seen further), they cannot strictly be called the means by which cognition really takes place. Secondly, the scope of the senses is limited insofar as each sense has its own specific, and limited, frame of reference. There is no doubt for the Siddhāntin, however, that there is some cognitive element in man which is not restricted as the senses are. This element or principle is responsible for the possibility of the various forms of cognition which should, therefore, be called the pramāṇa, in the true sense of the term. In Śivāgrayogin's own words:

It should be acknowledged that there is some means of cognition which grasps all objects, since it is impossible that the senses such as sight, etc., can grasp objects other than those which are their respective objects.¹²

The authority on the basis of which this argument is made, clarifies the Siddhāntin's point even further:

In the perception of sound there is no sight and in the perception of colour there is no hearing. It is samvid (consciousness) which grasps everything and, therefore, it alone is regarded as the valid means of cognition.¹³
Śivāgrayogin identifies samvid with cit-śakti when he says, about the means of cognition which grasps all objects, that "that, indeed, is cit-śakti." What this means for man as a cognitive being is that:

The ātman's cit-śakti, which is a synonym for [what yields] valid cognition and which is devoid of memory, misapprehension, and doubt, is the general definition of [what constitutes] the valid means of cognition. Insofar as cit is not only indestructible but is in fact also inseparable from its śakti--as already seen (Chapter 1, p. 12) with the power of consciousness being inherent to consciousness itself--it follows that there should be an uninterrupted 'knowledge-experience' of itself through its own śakti. But, then, this is possible, as already categorically stated above, only with the cit-śakti which is devoid of doubt, misapprehension and memory.

These three factors are limiting agents of man's intrinsic power of consciousness (ātma-cit-śakti)--on account of the efficacy of its association with malam. Each of these is clearly defined as follows. Doubt is "a notion conditioned by two alternatives, on account of perceiving common features, such as [when one wonders] 'is this a pillar or a person?' etc." Misapprehension is "the notion of something not in the thing as such, as [when one apprehends] silver in the mother-of-pearl, etc." Memory is "a notion arising from impressions produced in previous experiences such as a lover's vision of the beloved, etc."
The conclusion, therefore, is that "the cit-śakti which is devoid of these three is, indeed, the valid means of cognition." 19

Since man is not devoid of these three factors, which are consequences of the involvement in worldly experiences, it follows that there can be no knowledge of cit (consciousness) which its own śakti is capable of fully furnishing. The question asked earlier may be repeated in the context here: why is man in a state such that the powers of consciousness (cit-śakti) are conditioned and, thereby, hindered by doubt, misapprehension and memory? The question becomes crucial especially in the light of the possibility, as already seen, of cit-śakti functioning in an unfettered state. The answer to the question was provided in the discussion concerning the proof for the existence of malam, and its efficacy in limiting the expression of the ātman's power of consciousness. The limitation under which cit-śakti operates in man does not, however, preclude the Siddhāntin's view that it is in fact the only means of cognition and knowledge as such.

In view of the unique standpoint in accepting cit-śakti as the only pramāṇa, it is important to see how Śivāgrayogin discusses in detail the validity of such a position— it is important insofar as it furnishes the precise sense in which the Siddhāntin argues his case, especially in view of the thesis that man's essential nature
is defined by consciousness (cit) and the power (śakti) intrinsic to it.

The discussion in this context centres around the synonymous terms karāṇa and sādhana, which mean 'an instrument, agent, or apparatus' which serves as a 'means' through which anything may be effected or accomplished. The words avyāpti and ativyāpti also occur frequently in the discussion and are used to express fallacies in any definition of a term. Avyāpti is the fallacy of a definition which is too narrow insofar as there can be evidence of instances not encompassed or pervaded (avyāpti) by the definition, e.g., the definition that man is a being who eats cooked food does not include those who eat raw food. Ativyāpti is the fallacy of a definition which is too wide since its scope extends beyond its intended limits or over-pervades (ativyāpti) into instances which cannot strictly be said to be included in the definition, e.g., in the definition that man is a mortal being, mortality applies to elephants and ants, as well.

Before setting forth his own definition Śivāgrayogin first considers what an opponent might have to say. The objection is that cit-śakti as a definition of pramāṇa cannot be accepted because, firstly, a pramāṇa:

cannot be an instrument (sādhana) of valid cognition since it [the definition] is too wide with regard to a lamp, etc., [which would also be included]. This has even been said in the Pauśkara [Āgama, 7:11]: "Now, whatever is the instrument (sādhana) of valid cognition, why cannot it be a means of cognition
(pramāṇa)? That cannot be since the situation will arise where the eyes, the lamp, etc., will have the nature of the means of cognition (pramanatva).20

The method of putting authoritative statements in the mouth of the opponent is stylistically very effective. It is the acquaintance with Śivāgrayogin’s own standpoint that facilitates the task of distinguishing his view from that of the opponent.

The fallacy of the definition which the opponent points out here is that an instrument which cannot operate on its own, e.g., a lamp, could be taken as the real means of cognition, and not necessarily cit-śakti alone. In the light of this statement the opponent points out further, that if cit-śakti were to be considered as the valid cognition itself (pramiti)—which the Siddhāntin does, as already seen—then it is impossible that it can also serve as an instrument (sādhanā) for cognition itself.21 The objection amounts to saying that if cit-śakti is identical with pramiti (valid cognition) then pramiti would be an eternal feature because cit-śakti is eternal. In other words, potentially there would always be a condition of valid cognition if the Siddhāntin’s position were tenable, but this is not the case as far as man is concerned.

The next objection that the opponent raises, in anticipation of a possible clarification, is that the Siddhāntin cannot say:

Cit-śakti alone is not the valid cognition (pramiti) but cit-śakti which is defined (avacchinnā) by this
or that object and it [cit-śakti] is produced through the production of the qualifying object and, thus, it is not impossible for it [cit-śakti] to be an instrument (sādhana); and there can be no fallacy of over-pervasion concerning things like a lamp, etc., since the word 'sādhana' is [not different] from the word 'karana'.

This argument from the opponent's point of view gives the impression that a pramāṇa, for the Siddhāntin, could well be a sādhana or karana and if cit-śakti's relation to objects is the determining factor for what constitutes a definition of a pramāṇa, then clearly the senses too would have to be included according to such a definition. The opponent's argument is that if the Siddhāntin accepts this position, then obviously there cannot be the charge of having a definition which is too wide.

The opponent, however, realizes that this is precisely what the Siddhāntin cannot accept because of an evident problem in such a position, under certain conditions:

It is through the existence of a qualifying object—and as a consequence of such an object alone—that cit-śakti is generated, even when there is no contact of the eye, etc., [with an object]; and in such a case [there can be no valid cognition] since it is not produced through sight, etc.22

It is clear, according to the opponent, that when the eyes are not in contact with an object, the perception of the object is impossible. Conversely, it may be said that when there is no visible object, the function of otherwise proper sight is useless in perceiving objects, for example, at night. If the sense of sight were accepted as being a
pramāṇa, as shown in the previous argument, then it would mean that the mere possession of good sight is sufficient to yield valid cognition, even when there is no direct contact with an object. Further, and on the other hand, the mere presence of an object should yield cognition even without sight, since the mere presence of the object is said to 'produce' cit-śakti. Therefore, as the opponent implies, with cit-śakti as the pramāṇa cognition, ipso facto, should take place. In other words, in neither of these cases is there valid cognition, i.e., neither with cit-śakti alone, and without the sense of sight, nor with sight alone which is not capable of seeing in the dark.

The opponent goes on to say that "since even a doubt, an erroneous cognition, etc., would be aspects of cit-śakti which is qualified by this or that object, there would be too wide a definition as regards the 'cause' (karāṇa) of these."23 The argument is that if cit-śakti is the pramāṇa, and if it is said to function as an instrument of cognition, such as sight, then such a definition is far too wide in its scope, since it would be responsible not only for valid cognition (pramiti), but for doubts and erroneous cognition as well. In short, this means that it is impossible for the Siddhāntin to have a viable definition of cit-śakti as the only means of cognition, since the instruments of perception, such as sight, would have to be included insofar as there is any reference to an object.24
In such a case there can be no distinction between the causes of valid and invalid cognition, and whatever is said to be the cause of both would have a scope inadmissibly too wide in its application. Hence, the Siddhāntin's notion of cit-śakti as the only valid means of cognition is untenable according to the opponent.

The above objections rest on what precisely constitutes the definition of an instrument (karaṇa, sādhana) of cognition. The Siddhāntin thus has to consider the opponent's views on the matter before arriving at a final definition of cit-śakti as a pramāṇa.

Śivāgrayogin objects to five different views on the nature of instrumentality (karaṇatvam) that the above arguments of the opponent take for granted. He says that a final settlement is impossible as to whether instrumentality is--

1. connected with a result by being distinguished as separate from it (ayoga-vyavacchedena phalasambandhitvam);
2. a possession of a function (vyāparavatvam);
3. a possession of a function connected with a result (phala-niyata-vyāparavatvam);
4. the being set into motion by an agent of action (kartṛi-preryatvam); or
5. an assemblage of instruments of valid cognition (pramā-sāmagrītvam).
For a proper understanding of the Siddhānta position, it is necessary to see what Śivāgrayogin says about each of these points.

Instrumentality (karāṇātva) cannot be said to be connected with a result, since such a view would contain the fallacies of a definition being both too wide and even too narrow. It would be too wide insofar as it would include karman, intended here in the grammatical sense of 'object', which involves pleasure and pain. Such a position is inadmissible because pleasure and pain cannot be regarded as instruments (karapas) since they are results (phalas) of previously performed deeds. Such a definition of instrumentality is therefore given too wide a scope. Further, if instrumentality is connected only with a result, then certain instances of perception are excluded from the definition as, for example, when the function of sight is operative but the object is not really seen. That is, the eyes 'function' but there is no result insofar as there is no cognition of any object—a case of seeing without looking. In this way, instrumentality defined as what is connected with a result has to be ruled out.

The second definition of instrumentality, namely, that it is the possession of a function, is also unacceptable for the reason that it is too wide insofar as it would include things like a pot and a lamp. These objects undoubtedly possess certain functions, but these
functions do not necessarily make them 'means' of valid cognition, even though a lamp, for example, as an instrument may be an aid to perception. On the other hand, these functions exclude the activity of subsumptive reflection (parāmarśa), i.e., the activity which yields the knowledge of the minor term of an inference in its connection with the major term, and which is an 'instrument' of any inference, though itself devoid of any 'function'. It cannot be said, further, that the instrument (karaṇa) is the indicatory mark or sign (liṅga) which has the function (vyāpārakām) of this subsumptive reflection—the argument is that in the inference 'there is fire because of smoke', smoke is the sign (liṅga) of fire but it cannot be the instrument (karaṇa) of the inference.

The above argument, in other words, is invalid because it is impossible for the liṅga to be a special instrument (karaṇa) of an inference because it is improper to say that a liṅga produces anything "since it has the nature of the past and the future." In other words, a sign such as smoke, which leads to the inference about the presence of fire, in principle exists all the time and is manifest at all times whenever there is fire. The sign of fire is smoke and this is always so. It is the sign of fire and not the instrument which brings about the inference of fire (nor is it the instrument which causes fire) and, hence, a liṅga cannot be the karaṇa which comes into contact
with a particular object at a particular time. The definition of instrumentality as the possession of a function is fraught with the above problems and is, therefore, unacceptable to the Siddhāntin.

The above arguments serve as the basis for a refutation of the third definition of instrumentality, viz., that it is the possession of a function necessarily connected with a definite result. "When it is dark, etc., the contact of the eye [with an object] does not produce any result, and in the absence of any rule for this [viz., that whenever the function of sight is operative the object must be cognized] the definition excludes sight, etc."29 Whilst the previous argument is a refutation of what was taken to be an 'instrument' which is always present, this argument now refutes—on the basis of its being too narrow—the view that the cognition of an object must necessarily take place when the corresponding sense is operative. It cannot be argued to compromise the situation (the Siddhāntin tells the opponent) that indeed there can be no sight in darkness but that, for example, for sight to be possible in the dark—and thereby lead necessarily to the production of a result, viz., the sight of the object—there can be for sight in darkness "an association with some other cause."30

The objection that the Siddhāntin raises here is that the opponent cannot justify a definition of instrumentality in this context, i.e., as what must
necessarily produce a result, by admitting an aid, e.g., a lamp, which makes visibility possible in the dark. If this were the case, that is, if one were to justify arguments in such a way, then every activity in the world could be explained—and explained away—by such conditions. The phrase "connected with a result" to explain instrumentality, thereby becomes meaningless,31 apart from the fact that the value of a definition would be lost. In other words, there is no significance attached to the cognition which sight itself is said to provide if an additional factor, on account of which visibility becomes possible in certain instances, were accepted. Such a position would mean an inadmissible inclusion within its scope also of karman, action in general, which would immediately produce the necessary result by the various modes of auxiliaries—just as the lamp would produce the desired result of the sight of an object at night.32

Further, "if it is said that the difference in the terms 'instrument', 'act', and 'agent' is due only to a difference of designation (upādhi), then it is not so." If this were the case, then each term, including the agent of an action, would be absorbed into the other. Moreover, the eyes, for example, would become as good as non-existent in the case of an inference (e.g., of fire), made possible by some instrument involved in the perception of an object (e.g., of smoke). In this way, the term 'instrumentality'
is devoid of any significance whatsoever. The Siddhāntin points out here that there is no arbitrariness in the distinction contained in usages such as: an agent (kartrī) performing an act (karman) using an instrument (karapa). In other words, Śivāgrayogin is arguing the point that aids (such as lamps) to instruments (such as eyes, through which sight takes place) are not instruments, strictly speaking, and this applies especially in the epistemological context, where there is a concern with the way in which cognition and knowledge occurs. The following is presupposed in the argument here: just as the lamp is not the instrument of sight in relation to the eyes, the eyes themselves are not, strictly speaking, the means of sight in relation to the conscious power (cit-śakti) which makes their operation possible. In the light of this, the conclusion which the Siddhāntin comes to is that instrumentality which is defined as the possession of a function which is necessarily connected with a definite result, is quite unacceptable.

The fourth definition of instrumentality as the being set into motion by an agent of action, is also rejected. Śivāgrayogin's considered opinion is that this is too broad a definition, so as to include even the body, and only partially applies to subsumptive reflection. The body cannot be the means per se of cognition insofar as it is itself set into motion, no less than a lamp has to be turned on for sight at night. That is to say that just as a lamp
or light is an auxiliary factor for sight, so too the eye itself is, by extension, an auxiliary factor at the service of the real means of perception (or inference), viz., citsakti. Whilst subsumptive reflection (parāmarśa) is acceptable as an instrument (karana), only insofar as it yields a valid conclusion (anumiti), and is an indispensable component of an inference (anumāna)—as already seen—nonetheless, as far as the definition under consideration is concerned, it cannot be regarded as an independent agent (svatantra-kartri), responsible for the act of inferring a conclusion. Parāmarśa constitutes a "complex" component of the inferential process as a whole and, apart from this, it is "not conditioned by the will of an agent (purusa-tantra) but by the object (vastu-tantra) or by another knowledge which serves as its means (pramāṇa-tantra)." In the light of these defects, the view of instrumentality under consideration would also have to be unacceptable.

The fifth definition of instrumentality as an assemblage of the instruments of cognition, would also have to be rejected on the grounds that each sense of perception, individually, would be excluded from the definition. This is the case since:

...by [the word] assemblage (sāmagrī) [is meant what] has the form of a collection (samudāya) of instruments (karanas) and a collection would mean even sight, etc., which [individually] are not different from what make up the parts of the collection (samudāvin); by this, even the cognizer, the object cognized, etc., would be the means of cognition if [each sense were] an assemblage; this
would be a case of a transgression of the custom of the distinction [between one and the other].

This refutation by the Siddhāntin has several noteworthy points. Firstly, if instrumentality is defined as a collection of factors then the organ of sight, as a distinct entity, is excluded from being an instrument by itself. Secondly, if the organ of sight were itself seen as a collection of entities then such a definition would include within it the object which it, in fact, cognizes—since the object perceived would have to be included in the collection of causes responsible for cognition. Conversely, and thirdly, there would be no reason why the object perceived could not be regarded as the instrument of perception in the collection of causes. Fourthly, the common practice of distinguishing a subject from an object would have to be abandoned in everyday discourse. Fifthly, a collection of the causes of cognition which does not distinguish the threefold components of the cognizer, the cognized thing, and the means of cognition, in fact cannot logically be deemed a collection—such a threefold distinction cannot be entertained in terms of the definition of instrumentality under consideration.

The above objections, further, are justified for the following reason: "because it is improper for a collection of causes to be a means of cognition since it [the collection of causes] is an object cognized." This argument is based on what Pauskara Āgama 7:12 says, which
Whatever is an object of cognition cannot be a means of cognition, since it [the object] is cognized by some means.

It is on the basis of all the reasons stated above that the Siddhāntin says conclusively: "Therefore, the general definition of a means (pramāṇa) is not proper."

After discussing the impossibility of a means (pramāṇa) being an instrument (sādhana, karāṇa)—which a lamp and the sense are—Śivāgrayogin now states what precisely is to be regarded as the real means of cognition:

Cit-śakti which is delimited by this or that object is the valid cognition with regard to such an object, and this [cit-śakti] alone is the valid means of cognition.

With this clear statement identifying the means of cognition and the cognition itself, cit-śakti is given a unique position by the Siddhāntin. It is inextricably a part of cit (consciousness) and in the epistemological context the two terms cit and śakti are interchangeable. Therefore, to say that cit-śakti is the pramāṇa is to say, in effect, that cit itself fulfills this function. It is in the light of this identity that cit-śakti is both the pramāṇa (the means of valid cognition) and the pramāṇa (the valid cognition itself). Although Śivāgrayogin does not state it here explicitly, it may be added that cit-śakti is also the pramātri (the cognizing subject), insofar as it constitutes the essential feature or definition of man in the sense in which a quality (dharma or guṇa) is identical with what
possesses the quality (dharmin or guṇin).

It must be noted that despite the fact that cit-śakti is the eternally illuminating factor in man "it cannot be said that there is the contingency of manifesting an object all the time." This point is a crucial one because, unlike a lamp, cit-śakti is independent and its ability to provide knowledge—which is identical with itself as the means of knowledge—should, by definition, always reveal the objects of cognition in an unhindered and unlimited way. But this is obviously not the case with man in the world and an explanation is necessary so as not to relegate the concept of cit-śakti as the pramana to a position not different from that of the opponent—where the role of cit-śakti as an instrument of cognition would inadmissibly be identified with that, for example, of a lamp.

Although cit-śakti is intrinsically independent it becomes hindered and fettered through the factor of malaṃ, as already seen. This factor which is responsible, further, for cit-śakti to bear corporeality—albeit in order to be rid of all fetters finally—makes cit-śakti rely on the role of the buddhi (intellect) as an instrument to aid it. This situation represents the predicament of man, entailing the striking paradox of being essentially independent while at the same time being conditioned, namely, by the buddhi, the indispensable principle for man's experience in the world. Buddhi which has a limited scope and function, as will be
seen in greater detail below, is the chief aid to cit-śakti which comes under its sway in all matters, and especially in cognition. It enables cit-śakti to manifest itself in a limited way. In other words, in view of the need—as already seen—for the ātman to undergo worldly experience, the power of consciousness intrinsic to it (ātma-cit-śakti) consequently, and in the nature of the case, is limited. This means that the buddhi allows or makes possible a partial or restricted expression of cit-śakti.

It is to be noted that the ability of the buddhi to operate is made possible by cit-śakti itself and there is, in this context, the paradoxical situation of cit-śakti being fettered by the buddhi and the buddhi itself requiring the power of cit for its very operation. It has already been seen that the buddhi (intellect) belongs to the category of things which are of the nature of non-consciousness or insentience (acit, jāda) and, hence, requires a conscious motivating factor, namely, cit-śakti. Whilst the buddhi is useless without cit-śakti, it is, nonetheless, indispensable for man's life in the world. The limitation which the buddhi effects is temporary since its potency vanishes with the impotency of malam. The manifestation of the buddhi occurs, as already seen through its vṛitti (mode or modification), which is what makes cognition possible via the different senses. It may be said in this context that just as cit manifests itself through
its šakti, buddhi manifests itself through its vṛitti
(excepting, for the moment, the point that the intellect is
intrinsically insentient).

The above points are presupposed when Śivāgrayogin
says, in continuing his explanation of cit-šakti as the only
pramāṇa, that cit-šakti does not cognize objects all the
time. His argument is an intricate one and may be put in
his own words before attempting to consider it in detail.

The reason why cit-šakti does not cognize objects all the
time, he says, is:

Because, when there is no appearance of a buddhi-
vṛitti which is effected by sight, etc., the contact
with the object--by being obscured by malam--is as
good as non-existent. However, when it (buddhi-
vṛitti] arises by removing malam, and since the
contact with the object is unobscured--since this is
the occasion for cit-šakti to become delimited by
that object--there arises the manifestation [of the
object] for that period of time.39

What this means is that the vṛitti of buddhi is not only
responsible for a meaningful and useful contact between cit-
šakti and the object of perception, but also for the
duration of such a contact. No sooner the vṛitti ceases
than the obscuring veil of malam returns, the contact with
the object is broken and, thus, cognition does not occur.

In this sense the vṛitti is like a lamp which makes
visibility possible as long as it operates. The fact that
cit-šakti is made to rely on the function of the buddhi-
vṛitti is due to the restrictive potency of malam and this
situation is no reflection on the intrinsic nature of cit-
śakti as the all-pervasive, eternal factor of cognition and knowledge as such. It is only the ātman's association with malam that necessitates the reliance of cit-śakti on the vṛttis of the buddhi for life in the world.

Śivāgrayogin gives another interpretation of what exactly is meant by the relation between cit-śakti and an object:

The contact of the object with cit-śakti is the altered state of the buddhi-vṛitti in the form of the experience of the object as it is, and because the delimitation of the object is only temporary, there occurs a manifestation [of the object] only temporarily.

The lamp analogy may be applied here as well: just as the light of the lamp may be said to encompass the object according to its shape and size and, thereby, make it cognizable as such, so too a buddhi-vṛitti may be said to take on the nature and character of an object and, thereby, make it evidently cognizable as such. Further, just as a lamp can only manifest objects that come within its range, so too cognition takes place to the extent to which the buddhi-vṛitti is capable of functioning. Here again, this limitation to, and contingency on, the capacity of the buddhi-vṛitti is no reflection on the nature of cit-śakti.

From the above description, it would seem that whenever the buddhi-vṛitti with the aid, for example, of the senses, is instrumental in forging a link between an object and cit-śakti, the resultant cognition must necessarily be valid, in view of the fact that cit-śakti is "the
manifesting source or ground of knowledge." Whilst this must certainly be the case if cit-śakti--with its essential nature as the illuminating factor of cognition--is said to be the only pramāṇa, it would mean, nonetheless, that the role of doubt, error, and memory in empirical cognition would also have to be attributed to cit-śakti. In the light of the Siddhāntin's persistent claim that cit-śakti is not only the source of truth and validity but is also knowledge itself, this view would involve a striking anomaly if it were responsible for doubt and error as well. It is in order to be precise about the definition of cit-śakti as the only pramāṇa, that Śivāgrayogin repeats, in this context, the authoritative statement of the Pauṣkara Āgama (7:22):

Cit-śakti which is free of doubt, etc., is acknowledged as the valid means of cognition.42

This statement in itself is clear, but the question still remains as to how exactly it is to be interpreted. Śivāgrayogin provides an insightful exegesis here, the clarity of which is strikingly evident. He says: "The phrase 'free of doubt, etc.,' means 'the object-conditioned buddhi-vṛitti which is free of doubt, etc.,' and only after that, is there a [proper] delimitation by this or that object." Explaining further, he adds:

By the fact that it is impossible for cit-śakti to be identified with a buddhi-vṛitti which is ridden with doubt, etc., and since this would give rise to a contradiction in the phrase "[cit-śakti] free of that [doubt, etc.]", the meaning is: "only after the conditioned buddhi-vṛitti is free of that [doubt, etc.]", because this is the necessary
conclusion. What this typically compact Sanskrit construction means is that it is contradictory to say that *cit-śakti* per se must be free of doubt, misapprehension and the conditions of memory in order to be a *pramāṇa*. The *Pauśkara Āgama* does seem to mean this, in the quotation above, but this has to be understood—as is implicit in Śivāgrayogin's commentary on it—in the light of the definition of *cit-śakti* as the essentially unerring, undoubting conscious principle constituting the nature of man, vis à vis the role of the *buddhi* as a necessary aid to *cit-śakti* (which has become associated with *malam*, to its own detriment). *Cit* provides the power or ability (*śakti*) necessary for the *buddhi* to function and illumines, manifests, and cognizes what the *buddhi* presents to *cit*, through its *vṛitti*. Consequently, doubt and error have to be attributed to the *buddhi*. In other words, *cit-śakti* manifests the contents that the *buddhi-vṛitti* acquires "in the form of the experience of the object as it is," as seen above.

Śivāgrayogin cautions the opponent's impatience at this insistence on *cit-śakti* as the *pramāṇa*, as a consequence of which it might now be said: "Away with *cit-śakti!* Let the *buddhi-vṛitti* alone be the light for the [cognition of] objects." This is unacceptable for the following reason which clinches the argument: "Since the *buddhi* is insentient, as is also its *vṛitti*, and since the
illumination of objects can only be on account of \textit{cit-\textit{sakti}} which is of the form of consciousness (\textit{samvid}).\textsuperscript{46} This conclusion is on the authority of the Pauṣkara Āgama (7:17) statement which Śivāgrayogin quotes:

Since it is of the nature of non-consciousness, and since it is not different from the eye, etc., nor from what is derived out of \textit{prakriti}, \textit{buddhi} is not the \textit{pramāṇa}.

The word \textit{buddhi} here, as Śivāgrayogin says, is to be construed as \textit{buddhi-\textit{vṛitti}} "because its \textit{vṛitti} is not different from it."\textsuperscript{47}

The analysis which establishes \textit{cit-\textit{sakti}} as both the \textit{pramāṇa} and the \textit{pramiti} is grounded on a transcendental reflection on the nature of man as the cognizer involved in worldly experience. This special status is given to \textit{cit-\textit{sakti}} because it stands for consciousness (\textit{cit}) and its intrinsic power (\textit{sakti}). \textit{Cit} or consciousness, which is not essentially different from its own power or \textit{sakti}, is eternal, all-pervasive, and constitutes man's essence described as the \textit{ātman}, as already seen. It is the motivating principle of all activity characteristic of sentience (a fundamental position opposed to the Sāṅkhya, Yoga, and Advaita views). As such, it falls outside the realm of what can be referred to in spatial and temporal terms. When \textit{cit-\textit{sakti}} becomes associated with the limiting and, thereby, fettering adjuncts, there arises the possibility of a mistaken mutual identity between them. \textit{Buddhi}, \textit{manas}, and \textit{ahaṅkāra} are three potential candidates
for the erroneous identification with cit-śakti. Of these the buddhi is the most important to consider, as has been done above. In view of its indispensable function in the realm of phenomena, serving as an aid to cit-śakti, it appears to perform as cit-śakti itself, at whose disposal it in fact is. It is the role of the buddhi which forges the link between the empirical realm of phenomena and the transcendental realm where cit-śakti is said to reign supreme. At the empirical level cit-śakti administers, so to speak, through aids such as the buddhi, and becomes coloured by what the buddhi presents to it. Cit-śakti is thereby brought to the empirical level at the hands of the buddhi, guided and misguided by it. It is here, at this level, that whatever can be spoken of in spatial and temporal terms becomes erroneously directed at cit-śakti, which essentially transcends it.

When it is said that the buddhi forges the link between the phenomena (of which the buddhi is itself a part) and consciousness, what is implicit in the epistemological context, is that the buddhi operates in close association with the manas (mind), the ahaṅkāra (ego), and the indriyas (organs of sense), which are finally under the control of the buddhi. Cit-śakti illumines the information they provide, acquired by the instruments of sense perception (pratyakṣa), inference (anumāna) and verbal testimony or scriptural authority (śabda or śruti). In the light of what
has been said about cit-śakti as the only means of cognition (pramāṇa), it is to be noted that these three, which are generally regarded as means of cognition, are to be seen merely as instruments (as with the buddhi) which are operative only because cit-śakti makes possible an expression of their ability. It is only in this sense, namely, that cit-śakti alone is the means of cognition and knowledge—which at the empirical level requires the indispensable aid of certain instruments—that pratyakṣa, anumāna, and śabda are also indirectly referred to as pramāṇas, or means of cognition. When doubt, error, and memory enter into the fabric of cognition, these are attributed, as already seen, to the buddhi which, in turn, acquires them via sense perception, inference, and testimony. It is in this context that valid and non-valid cognition applies. As far as cit-śakti per se is concerned, it is beyond validity and non-validity and stands for truth as such. It is necessary now, therefore, to consider pratyakṣa, anumāna, and śabda as pramāṇas in the specific sense in which Śaiva Siddhānta regards them—they are necessary insofar as they broaden the scope toward the Śaiva Siddhānta understanding of man.

Before discussing the so-called three means of cognition, it is to be noted that it is precisely in this context of the concern with the theory of cognition that certain conditions—generally acknowledged by all systems of
Indian thought, including Śaiva Siddhānta—need to be fulfilled, in order that the accepted means of cognition retain their unique roles and natures. These conditions may be summarized as follows:

1. The cognition that each means furnishes must be new and not attainable by any other means.

2. One means may aid another in making the cognition possible—e.g., perception may aid the cognition arrived at through an inference—but the means in question should not be reducible to another.

3. The cognition arrived at through a particular means should not be contradicted (abādhita) by another means.

4. The accepted means of cognition should appeal to reason and in the case of scriptural authority (śruti, śabda), for example, (as will be seen), the revealed truth must appear probable and be made intelligible in terms of human experience (otherwise śruti would fail in its purpose).

It is in the light of a serious consideration of these factors that the Siddhāntin accepts only three 'means' of cognition which may now be dealt with, as Śivāgrayogin considers them.

3.2 **Sense perception (pratyakṣa)**

Sense perception is man's most basic and most important instrument of cognition. Its significance for epistemology can hardly be over-emphasized, especially since it is also the ground for the validity of all other instruments of cognition. Its importance is recognized by all systems of Indian philosophy and its significance is evident in the fact that it is usually the first described. What this means is that if the validity of sense perception
as a means of cognition is first established, then the validity, for example, of inference could have credibility—providing, of course, that the inferential process itself is sound.

In following the generally accepted definition of sense perception as a means of valid cognition in Indian thought, the Siddhāntin also acknowledges that perception has to be defined as "immediate cognition". It is the only type of cognition which is completely unmediated, i.e., the contact between the object perceived and the sense of perception is a direct one. Further, "the immediacy is a special quality [of perception] which is not fragmentary." By this is meant that the immediacy or directness involved between the object and the sense which perceives it, is not partial but whole. A subtle distinction is implicit here between the immediacy of an object to a particular sense, and the judgement about the object arrived at on the basis of the evident object.

The Saiva Siddhānta realism involved in this point is noteworthy. The object exists really, it is not something which has the status of a dream object. When an object comes within the range of the 'proper' function of a particular sense, its immediacy is evident completely, i.e., the immediacy is not partial or fragmentary. In other words, if the object comes within the range of the function of a sense, then perception takes place. On this principle,
namely, that the objects really exist and that the senses have the ability to perceive them, the validity or invalidity of the cognition that results is a secondary issue. In either case, some object is in question, the immediacy of which, as far as the perception of it is concerned, cannot be partial (khanda), which the judgement concerning the object might indeed be.

Whilst the immediacy entailed in perception is unfragmentary, the 'process' of perception itself, according to the Siddhāntin, is broadly said to be of two kinds: an indeterminate perception (nirvikalpa-pratyaksa) and a determinate perception (savikalpa-pratyaksa). What these are exactly is defined by the Pauṣkara Āgama (7:28):

The perception of the bare nature of a thing is indeterminate and [the perception] together with a relation to a name, class, etc., is determinate.52

This broad twofold division of perception is based on the functions of two indispensable categories for cognition, viz., the buddhi (intellect) and the manas (mind). It is the buddhi-vṛitti, as already seen, that forges the link between the object and cit-śakti and in this process the buddhi-vṛitti is assisted by the manas, which is in 'closer' contact with the sense organ that perceives the object. The sense organ feeds the sense data to the manas in a general way, and the buddhi specifies the object or passes judgement concerning it. At the level of the manas, the perception is indeterminate and, as a consequence of the function of the
buddhi, the perception becomes determinate. What this means is that the perception of the one and the same object undergoes these two phases, before cognition may be said to have arisen.

These phases are not open to verification and are descriptive postulates that attempt to describe the phenomenon of perception. These phases, further, are related directly to the specific roles assigned to the categories of the buddhi (intellect) and the manas (mind). The following may be mentioned by way of an example to attempt a further clarification of this distinction in perception which is purely psychological. When one perceives an object at a distance the fact of the object there, results in the cognition of something, the nature of which cannot be determined. At a closer examination, it is decided that the bare, indeterminate object is such and such a thing. It is given a name which sets it apart from other objects that also bear names. It is in this context that every cognition, which is in effect a determinate perception, is said to be always shaped by words.53 These two phases occur 'internally' or 'psychologically' and are designated the general, indeterminate (nirvikalpaka) perception and the specific, determinate (savikalpaka) perception. The distinction is implicit even in the swiftness with which cognition usually takes place—a swiftness which has to be attributed to the efficiency of
the manas. The description which has just been given here is different from the case of doubt: here there is first a bare perception of something which is subsequently determined to be a specific thing; in the case of doubt, on the other hand, one is not able to decide--for reasons which do not necessarily relate to the perception of the object itself--whether what is perceived is this or that thing.

Another way of dealing with perception is to classify it as comprising three kinds and thereby accounting for the whole gamut of the function of man's faculty of perception. These are (a) the perception which is dependent on the sense organs (indriya-sāpekṣa-pratyakṣam), (b) the perception which is dependent on the internal organs (antah-karaṇa-sāpekṣa-pratyakṣam), and (c) the perception which is not dependent on either of these two (ubhaya-nirapekṣa-pratyakṣam). Before dealing with these in detail, it is to be remembered that even in this classification, cit-śakti alone is the only true means of cognition. The organs of the body merely provide a channel for the power of consciousness (cit-śakti) to manifest itself. The mere presence of an organ of perception and the object related to it (e.g., an ear and a sound) are not sufficient for the phenomenon of perception or cognition as such. The Pauṣkara Āgama (7:26) which Śivāgrayogin quotes states the case clearly:

The association of an object and a sense alone is not regarded as perception since, without the
association with cit [śakti] there is the production of nothing. 54

3.2 (a) Sense organ perception

The perception that is dependent on the sense organs is the cognition of empirical objects. The things in the world are meant for man's experience of them. The objects are as real as they are validly cognized and their status can never be sublated. This is the case because the objects of experience in the world finally belong to the category of one of the three constituents of ultimate reality. When it is said that the objects are meant for the ātman's experience of them, it means that they are got to be known by man, on account of the ignorance about the nature of things as they are. It is because of a veil or barrier--effected, as already seen, by malam--between the ātman and the objects of the world, that the instruments of the sense organs are required. They aid the ātman by providing a channel for the experience of the world of objects potentially removing, thereby, the barrier of ignorance about it. Contrasting this kind of perception with mental perception (described below) Śivāgrayogin quotes Pauṣkara Āgama (7:30) which furnishes a precise definition of it:

[The perception which is] dependent on sense organs is different; it is the investigation of objects for the removal of the barrier through the channel [provided] by [cit] śakti which is dependent on the sense organs. 55

Implicit in this kind of perception is the contact
between a sense organ and an empirical object. Cit-śakti uses the channel provided by the organ and is responsible for the 'illumination' of the object, which is identical with the cognition of it.Śivāgrayogin makes a summary statement in the context of the discussion on perception which succinctly presents the Śaiva Siddhānta view on the matter. There is a need, he implicitly says in the following, for man's essentially independent power of consciousness (cit-śakti) to be involved in the experiences of the world:

... on account of the obstruction of malam, it [cit-śakti], though self-dependent, is intent upon external objects for the sake of experience through the channels of the internal organs and the external senses, being manifested by kalā [-tattva], directed to objects by ignorance and coloured by rāga [-tattva].

3.2 (b) Internal organ perception

The kind of perception which is dependent on the antah-karaṇas (internal organs) of the buddhi (intellect), the manas (mind), and the ahaṅkāra (ego) is of a kind which rests on the entire psychological complex of man, moulded by the experiences of life in the world. That is to say, it is a kind of perception which depends on the citta, the function of which—as a single unit—is responsible for reason, intelligence, and thought. This type of perception is of two types: the perception of a yogin (yogi-pratyakṣam) and the common perception of joy, etc.,
(prākṛita-sukha-ādi-pratyakṣam). The second type is also called mental perception (mānasaprātyakṣam).

The acknowledgement of the knowledge derived through yogic perception is based on the Śaiva Siddhānta acceptance--together with other schools, e.g., those of Vedānta--of the system of Yoga where, through a deliberate, austere training and practice, one can experience elevated states of consciousness. Śivāgrayogin's definition of yogic perception is that it is "a perception of the objects of the sense organs in the present, past and future by the mental faculty (manas), which is aided by the 'maturity of conduct' acquired through the practice of Yoga." In the perception which is dependent solely on the sense organs in their relation to an empirical object--as seen in the previous section--the factor of time is restricted to the presence of the perceived object and to elements of this cognition in its relation to previous experiences (not necessarily recalled readily) concerning the object. In trained yogic perception, on the other hand, the time factor is claimed to be as evident as the presence of the object itself, i.e., a clear perception of the object is said to take place in terms, for example, of the nature of the object as it is now, what it was in the past, and what its nature will be in the future. The content of such a cognition is not dependent solely on the sense organs, but on a trained perception using the faculty of the manas.
Further, such a perception, as with the one dependent on the sense organs, is also direct and immediate. 60

What distinguishes the role of the mind (manas) here, from the one in mental perception (mānasa-pratyakṣam) described below—which also belongs to the kind called internal organ perception under discussion—is that in yogic perception the faculty of the mind (manas) is specially developed and trained by yogic exercises. This feature puts the mind (manas) at a level qualitatively different from its role when untrained, insofar as it functions without the trained awareness of its potential capabilities, which are said to be evident through special exercises. It may be said, as explained further in the description of mental perception that follows, that man's reflections on the nature of 'inner' perception points to the possibility of exercising the efficiency of the mind (manas) as developed through the training (sādhana) elaborated in the Yoga system (adapted to the Śaiva Siddhānta philosophical presuppositions).

Śivāgrayogin defines mental perception (mānasa-pratyakṣam) as "the reflection on the experiences of joy and suffering." 61 Such a perception is not vague or general (nirvikalpaka), but a direct, determinate (savikalpaka) one on the part of the mental faculty (manas) with the aid of the intellect (buddhi). Such a perception, it may be said in anticipating the contents of the next chapter, has
significant soteriological implications. It is the outcome of man's involvement in life in the world, of the existential experiences of joy and suffering. It is this involvement that makes evident the polarities, such as joy and suffering, of life's experiences. Insofar as such a perception is a "reflection", it is a second order activity, but no less immediate as an 'internal' experience. The perception of a seemingly eternal, recurrent cycle of joy and suffering in human experience, is the outcome of a reflection on the nature of the atman's relation to the world of objects. An enquiry into the reason why the atman is made to undergo such states of experience, logically leads to an enquiry into the essential natures of both the world (pāśa-svarūpa) and of man in the world (paśu-svarūpa).

The outcome of mental perception (mānasa-pratyakṣam) may, therefore, be said to lead to the desire to be freed from the cycle of polarities, the experience of which vindicates itself. In other words, a break from saṃsāra, characterized essentially by suffering, is sought as a consequence of mental perception. Such a perception is not memory, which is merely the remembering of past experiences and which does not have the status of a valid cognition—as seen above where memory was discussed with doubt and error. Mental perception (mānasa-pratyakṣam) is, rather, a direct perception and a 'fresh' experience.
3.2 (c) **Independent perception**

The perception which is independent of both the internal organs and the sense organs "has the form of the manifestation of consciousness." This perception occurs unmediatedly and is the direct outcome of **cit-śakti** as the pramāna. The soteriological function of this true means of cognition (**cit-śakti-pramāṇam**) is evident in this kind of perception. In other words, the transcendental role of **cit-śakti** becomes evident through an empirical and existential reflection on the view that **cit-śakti** operates behind all the organs of perception. When **cit-śakti** manifests itself independently of these organs, the resultant knowledge can only be of the nature of its own manifestation, since **cit-śakti**—as already seen—is both the means of knowledge and the knowledge itself. Further, insofar as it constitutes man's essential nature, it is also intrinsically the subject that cognizes.

The knowledge which is a consequence of the perception which occurs through **cit-śakti** independent of the physical organs is said to be of two kinds: the knowledge of oneself (**sva-saṃvedana-pratyakṣam**) and the knowledge of what is to be known by oneself (**sva-saṃvedya-pratyakṣam**). The distinction between these two kinds of perception has a direct bearing on both Śaiva Siddhānta metaphysics and theology. Implicit in the distinction is the ontological status of the ātman and śivam, on the one hand, and between
the ātman and the world, on the other.

The involvement in the experiences of life in the world—as seen in the previous chapter with the analysis of verses three and four of the Śivajñānabodham—points to an ātman on account of "the cognition of not-thisness, the excess of mineness, there being consciousness when the senses have ceased ...", i.e., it points to the existence of an ātman which is different from the internal organs, etc., although it is said to undergo the five states of consciousness in the way already discussed. In other words, the knowledge derived through a transcendental reflection on the essential nature of the world (pāsa-svarūpa) points to a knowledge of man as a bound being (paśu-svarūpa). A reflection, further, on the possibility of an unlimited expression of man's essential nature of consciousness (ātma-svarūpa) leads to a knowledge of the power of consciousness (cit-śakti) as the ground of all knowledge which, as already seen, is knowledge itself. The ātman's perception of itself by itself, i.e., through its own cit-śakti which is independent of the limiting factors wrought by the sense organs, is the sva-saṁvedana-pratyakṣam (the perception of the knowledge itself), referred to above.

The realm which this perception refers to is the ontological one, and in terms of the categories of ultimate reality yet to be known or experienced by the ātman, it is the essential nature of Śivam that the ātman has to directly
perceive or experience. It is this perception which the Ātman has to have that is referred to as sva-saṁvedya-pratyakṣam (the perception of what is to be known by itself). Here too cit-śakti alone is the means by which this perception takes place directly and unmediatedly. Further details concerning the nature of this type of perception will be dealt with in the next chapter when the Ātman's unity-in-difference (bheda-abheda) relationship with Śivam is considered.

The term pratyakṣa used in the context of the above discussion has a special connotation. Although it is generally rendered in English as 'perception', the words 'intuition' or 'experience' (i.e., synonymous with anubhava), are more appropriate for the specific context in which it is used here. The perception, or rather the apperception, here has the evident nature of consciousness (cit or saṁvid) and is qualitatively superior to the other kinds of perception, insofar as it is independent and unmediated representing, thereby, an unfettered expression of man's essential nature characterized by consciousness. In other words, it is a perception which takes place in the 'higher' states of consciousness and presupposes a transcendence of limitation and dependency. Such a perception which is independent of all organs is, as Śivāgrayogin says:

...the direct knowledge of oneself that is produced on account of the Ātman's eternal relation with cit-śakti that has its fetters removed.64
This position is maintained on the grounds of acknowledging the authority of the Pauṣkara Āgama (7:29) statement, about the different kinds of perception, that:

Of these [the perception] independent of the [physical] organs is on account of the [Ātmān's] indissoluble union with cit-śakti which has its bondages given up completely; the union [between the Ātmān and the cit-śakti] is considered to be natural.65

3.3 Inference (anumāna)

Apart from being the means of cognition using the internal and external sense organs as instruments, cit-śakti also manifests itself through the aid which constitutes the process of inference (anumāna). This is not cit-śakti as a pramāṇa which is independent of the sense organs, as discussed above. Inference is a process that is based on empirical observation and produces a cognition that is not directly and immediately evident. This is to say that whereas sense perception is immediate and produces a direct cognition of objects such as 'this is a pot', inference is mediate cognition as, for example, in the conclusion—arrived at indirectly—of the existence of fire, based on the direct and immediate perception of smoke which is previously known to be a sign (liṅga), invariably connected with fire. Whereas the function of cit-śakti independent of the sense organs operates at the transcendental level, cit-śakti which operates through or in the process of inference has its function rooted in the empirical world of objects,
the contact with which is made possible through the senses as instruments.\footnote{66}

Śivāgrayogin follows the Nyāya method of establishing the validity of inference on the grounds of clearly defining what constitutes invariable concomitance (vyāpti), which is inextricably connected with an inference. Insofar as his defence for the validity of inference rests on this important term, it is necessary to give his definition of it. He says: "The relation, which is not an adventitious condition, between the probandum and the probans is called invariable concomitance here."\footnote{67} It is on the basis of this definition that a clear notion of what inference is is given: "The knowledge of invisible objects through well-established invariable concomitance is inference."\footnote{68}

In defending inference as a valid means of cognition Śivāgrayogin discusses possible logical objections that may be raised by a prospective opponent (chiefly a Cārvāka). These objections, albeit somewhat lengthy, are best presented in his own words, since they furnish the context in which his defence of inference applies:

Now, there is no means of valid cognition called inference because: of the impossibility of perceiving the invariable concomitance [e.g., of smoke with fire] which is accepted as being responsible for that [inference]; there is an unremoved doubt of a [possible] violation [of invariable concomitance] in other places—even though there may be a correlation [between smoke and fire] in several places; and because, in removing this [doubt] by indirect argument (tarka), there
arises infinite regress, since the indirect argument itself is rooted in [the acceptance of] invariable concomitance. For this reason [viz., that the argument depends on invariable concomitance], the view that there is an apprehension of invariable concomitance on account of the certainty that it is not an adventitious condition, is rejected. [This is rejected] because of the inadequacy of perception to grasp [the invariable concomitance] by penetrating the locus (adhikarana) and cause (sādhanā) whenever there is [a case of] invariable concomitance; and also since there will be an infinite regress in regarding inference as being capable of grasping invariable concomitance. 69

The main points of the opponent's objections which Śivāgrayogin has to deal with may be summarized as follows:

1. The knowledge of invariable concomitance--as, for example, between smoke and fire--which is based on perception, is an indispensable presupposition for the validity of an inference;

2. The invariable concomitance itself is not open to perception;

3. Even if the invariable concomitance were accepted in certain cases, there is always a logical possibility of it not being a universal rule;

4. This doubt cannot be removed through argumentation, which itself would be based on the knowledge of invariable concomitance, and so on;

5. It is humanly impossible to test every case of invariable concomitance;

6. Inference cannot be said to furnish the proof of all cases of invariable concomitance as it would lead to an infinite regress;

7. Therefore, inference as a valid means of cognition is rejected.

The opponent's argument is logically sound, but does not acknowledge--as Śivāgrayogin is quick to point out--that it contains elements of the very inferential process it attacks. 70 This refutation is based on what Śivāgrayogin
s hypothesis at the very outset, referring to the opponent's view that inference is not a valid means of cognition. He says:

This is not so, since there would be the contingency of a cessation of [mental] activity as such in not accepting inference as a valid means of cognition--since [this] activity arises through the inference, etc., of effects of unknown objects which come within the range of [man's] activity. Thus, there need be no effort by one desirous [of verifying the existence] of the fire on the mountain, etc.71

With this point, Šivāgrayogin considers inference as a valid means of cognition on the grounds that it constitutes an essential factor of man's mental activity, based on the involvement in life in the world.

In other words, it is natural--be it through learned experience or through verbal testimony--to infer the existence, for example, of fire merely on the perception of smoke. Such a certainty is grounded on the realistic view of the invariable concomitance (vyāpti) of smoke with fire. The opponent's position does not acknowledge a cause (kārana) for the existence of smoke on the grounds of the mere logical view that every instance of smoke alone need not necessarily attest the existence of fire--the fire itself would have to be seen in order to validate it as the possible cause of the smoke. This can be said to be a case of 'inverted' inference: whereas the Siddhāntin wants to prove the existence of the fire which is validly inferred through the perception of the smoke, the opponent, on the other hand, would be proving the validity of the smoke itself on the grounds of empirically verifying the existence
of the fire. Therefore, Śivāgrayogin tells the opponent:

It is not proper to say that there can be no inferential activity because of the absence of a cause, which is [in fact] grasped through invariable concomitance.\(^72\)

This argument is based on the positive acknowledgement of man's situation in the world, and is characteristic of the Śaiva Siddhānta realism directed at the opponent:

On account of the acceptance of the ability of the eyes or of the mind (manas), etc., in apprehending the universal concomitance with regard to objects which are unknown, etc., there is no contradiction of the perceptibility of that [invariable concomitance].\(^73\)

In short, Śivāgrayogin feels that he has effectively defended the case of inference on the basis of the very method of argumentation employed by the opponent—who seems to reject it on a matter of principle. In this there is a failure to recognize a self-contradiction insofar as the rejection is justified in terms of a mechanism of argumentation which it wants to reject, viz., the process of inference as a valid means of cognition. In this sense, the opponent makes the case for inference even stronger.

After having established the validity of inference, Śivāgrayogin continues with a division of it into two kinds: an inference for oneself (svārtha-anumāna) and that for others (parārtha-anumāna). Implicit in these two kinds of inference is the interesting distinction between a means of cognition valid to oneself and the same presented in a logical pattern to convey the validity of the cognition to
others. The inference for oneself is defined as: "... the inference of fire, etc., after grasping the invariable concomitance between smoke and fire, on account of seeing the sign of the invariable concomitant [smoke] on the mountain." When this cognition is presented in the form of the five-membered syllogism, it constitutes an inference for another. A noteworthy point implicit in this distinction is the possibility of the view that man first draws the conclusion, e.g., that there is a fire, although the smoke is in fact first seen--this would essentially be an inference for oneself. On the basis of this cognition the conclusion is then translated into a form intelligible to others. This would follow a logic built into man's use of language and it would be an inference for others, as referred to above.

It was stated above (p.178) that one of the conditions that needs to be fulfilled for a means of cognition to retain its unique character, is that it furnish what is new and not attainable by any other means. There is no doubt that an inference involves the memory (smṛiti) of previous cases where, e.g., smoke was invariably concomitant with fire. However, it is emphatically stated that inference cannot be relegated to the function of memory which involves, exclusively or only, the revival of traces (saṃskāras) of previous experiences. Inference requires something more. That is, in addition to memory, it requires
paramārtha, a subsumptive reflection which, as already seen, is a cognition "which arises from a combination of the knowledge of invariable concomitance (vyāptijñāna) and that of the presence of the reason (hetu) in the subject (pakṣa)." In other words, in addition to memory, inference requires the knowledge of the relation between the middle and the minor terms of an argument which cooperate with the traces (saṃskāras) of previous experience, in relation to what is perceived. The role of memory alone, which is a mere recollection of past experience, therefore, cannot be equated with inferential thinking, which is also an intrinsic part of man's mental make up.

3.4 Verbal testimony (śabda)

It is the same opponent who, in providing the link into this section, calls for Śivāgrayogin's defence of verbal testimony (śabda, śrutī) as a valid means of cognition (pramāṇa). It is very conveniently rejected on the grounds that it is said to follow logically from the previous objections: "Through the invalidity of inference [itself] there is also the invalidity of verbal testimony, which is dependent on the grasping of the relation [between words or statements] based on that [inference]." Śivāgrayogin's answer in short—apart from the fact (which he does not state explicitly) that the opponent is again being self-contradictory by giving a testimony in verbal
terms--follows from his defence as outlined above: "That inference being a valid means of cognition, there is the validity also of Nigama, Āgama, etc., which are established and grasped through the relationship [of statements] based on that [inference]."\textsuperscript{80}

The Śaiva Siddhānta defence of verbal testimony as a means of valid cognition can be dealt with in the light of two related contexts in which it applies: (a) in the light of the Siddhāntin's earnest effort in defence of the Āgamas (in addition to the Vedas or Nigamas) as revealed, authoritative scriptures and (b) in the light of what constitutes meaningfulness in man's use of language. Before dealing with these separately the following points may be noted.

In both these contexts, śabda refers to words as a source of independent knowledge, not reducible to what can be obtained through inference and perception, as will be seen in more detail below. When words are derived from a source which the tradition regards as being infallible, they bear the stamp of authority or testimony. Implicit in the nature of this situation--which is a traditional acceptance and acknowledgement of a 'special' source of knowledge--is a defence of scripture as such. In other words, and in the context here, the Śaiva Siddhānta attempt to establish śabda as a pramāṇa (in the specific sense of the term, as already seen) constitutes a defence of scripture in general, and of
the Āgamas in particular. In both the contexts of śabda referred to above, the knowledge furnished should not be contradicted (abādhita) by any other means, if it is at all to retain its validity. Further, the knowledge must be new, since this is a condition to be fulfilled by any separate means of cognition, as already seen.

It is claimed that śabda furnishes a knowledge of certain truths essential to man, which are not provided by perception and inference alone, e.g., the nature of man's essential definition, characterized as the ātman. In this context words function as a revelation insofar as they disclose or divulge a unique kind of knowledge. The fact that such a knowledge should not be contradicted by any other means, implies that the content of revelation must be internally coherent and that, though it may be above reason, it cannot go against it. Further, as already pointed out, the revealed truth has to be made intelligible in terms of human experience, for it to have any use at all. It is in this context that śabda plays a crucial soteriological function, which operates closely with pratyakṣa and anumāna, in divulging the condition of a possibility of unfettered existence, represented in the discussions on mokṣa (liberation) and the jīvan-mukta (liberated being). Also, it is here that the two senses (referred to above) in which śabda may be discussed, are closely related and even meet.

It is to be noted, further, that all the three
instruments of knowledge accepted by the Śaiva Siddhāntin have a limited function:

What is difficult to be indicated by these and other means of cognition, is Śivam.81

This statement can be interpreted as representing a limitation inherent in words, and in the use of language as such, to adequately convey the nature of ultimate reality which—in the light of the discussions on mokṣa—can nonetheless be experienced. In this context, revelation functions as a reflection and, if metaphorical language may come to the rescue here, it may be said that: just as a reflection—the content of which is essentially unreal—serves the purpose or means of showing the facts concerning the object reflected, and just as the roaring of a lion in a dream may awaken one to the world, so too śabda as a pramāṇa points to the nature of the ultimate reality, which śabda itself is not. Śabda, in other words, is not the content of what it reveals, though it may be an indispensable instrument for it:

Verbal testimony is the basis for the inference regarding the knowledge of Śivam, only indirectly.82

3.4 (a) The validity of the Āgamas

The word Āgama is derived from the verbal root gam with the prefix ā- and literally means 'to come'. As a body of literature, Āgama means 'that which has come down' referring, thereby, to a body of knowledge that has been
handed down from one generation to another in a traditional manner. In this sense of the term, the word is a synonym for Veda. In order to distinguish the two—insofar as they constitute two separate bodies of valuable doctrinal literature (śāstra)—Veda is given the name Nigama as well. The issue which calls for an explicit defence of the validity of the Āgamas is over the concern whether this body of literature deserves the merit of being what is called revealed scripture (śruti or śabda)—a privilege accorded, without any doubt, to the Vedas. The discussion around this issue concerns the view that the two are currents of thought which are "independent and antagonistic." On the other hand, there is also the view that the Āgamas are an essential—albeit independent—development of the Vedas themselves. The debate on the validity of the Āgamas applies to the three branches of Hinduism that possess this vast body of literature. It seems that at the time Śivāgrayogin wrote (sixteenth century) the question of the validity of the Āgamas was still a burning issue, which turned him into an apologist of the Śaiva Āgamas. The numerous issues around this question, and the elaborate argumentation concerning them, are beyond the scope of this study. What, however, calls for Śivāgrayogin's zealous philosophical defence of the Āgamas (as texts of revelation no less in stature than those which make up the Vedas) is chiefly because the revered and greatly honoured Śaṅkara
(eighth century), the champion and propounder of Advaita Vedānta—which Śivāgrayogin accepts to a point permissible within the ontological and philosophical presuppositions of Śaiva Siddhānta—questions the authority of the Āgamas in his Brahmasūtrabhaṣya. Śivāgrayogin refers to Bādarāyaṇa's sūtras 1:4.1, 2:2.1, and 2:2.37 which give Śaṅkara the platform to launch his attack on the validity of the Āgamas. Suffice it to say, without entering into the intricacies of his arguments, that Śivāgrayogin sees the eternity of the Vedas and the Āgamas as being derived from a common authoritative source:

Therefore, there is the validity of both the Vedas and the Āgamas, verily by being taught by Paramesvara [Śiva] who is: the supremely trustworthy person, the remover of man's bonds, the independent one, the perfect one, imperishable, perceiving things as they are, devoid of partiality, omniscient, flawless, and eternal.

What has been attempted above is a presentation of the Śaiva Siddhānta acceptance of the validity of the Āgamas, in addition to the generally accepted authority of the Vedas. In his commentary on the Śivajñānabodham Śivāgrayogin states this explicitly. However, it is a striking fact that his views are based almost entirely on the authority of the Āgamas alone and he liberally quotes them—particularly the Pauśkara and Mrigendra Āgamas—in justification of his ideas.

The Āgamas deal with a wide range of topics that encompass subjects such as architecture, consecration,
rituals, rules for priests and devotees, and philosophy. These themes are conveniently divided into four sections, though this is not explicitly done in some particular Āgamas which may even omit certain sections, viz., the section dealing with philosophy or knowledge (jñāna-pāda); the section dealing with yogic practices (yoga-pāda); the section dealing with rituals (kriyā-pāda); and the section dealing with devotion (caryā-pāda). It is clear from this that Śivāgrayogin draws chiefly from the jñāna-pāda of the Āgamas he refers to. The divisions may be seen as a necessary convenience which adapts to man's decreasing capacities and limited vision on account of the untrained ability and faculty to see the manifold areas of the truth which the Āgamas reveal, as being intrinsically a single unit. In other words, even if, for example, one were to uphold the supremacy of the philosophy and knowledge (jñāna) of the ultimate, ontological categories of Śivam, ātman, and malam--usually dealt with in the jñāna-pāda of an Āgama--this should not be extricated from its essential applicability to the other areas. This is to say that no one section should be seen as being an exclusive, independent, and self-sufficient part of an Āgama. This seems to be the intention of the following Mrigendra Āgama verse:

Thus the three categories are dealt with together in the first [knowledge] section; with the devotional, yogic, and ritual sections their application will be explained.
The implications of this unitary view of the content of the Āgamas are of special significance in the discussion concerning the enlightened being, liberated from a limited and fettered outlook. It means that such a person would see no essential distinction between jñāna and the other three branches of the Āgamas. Insofar as the other branches may be seen as what expresses the devotion (bhakti) of a devotee (bhakta), jñāna and bhakti may thus be said, finally, to be indistinguishable. For such a being—one for whom immanent transcendence becomes evident—all distinctions vanish and reality is seen as it is. This point will be dealt with further in the next chapter. What, however, is to be noted in the context of the discussion in this section, is that it is sabda, the word of revealed scripture (Śāstra, Śruti), that show what the essence of man is, especially as a part of what ultimate reality is. It is both the Vedas and the Āgamas that fulfil this task.

3.4 (b) The Śaiva Siddhānta theory of language

The other context in which sabda may be discussed, as already pointed out, is in the light of what constitutes meaningfulness in man's use of language. Some of the issues involved in this context are, for example, what constitutes a sentence, what constitutes meaning, and what the relationship is between a word and the object to which it refers. Before attempting to present Śivāgrayogin's views
on these issues, it will be useful to recall a few points already made.

It was stated that the ingredients of man's categories of experience constitute the scheme of the 36 tattvas discussed in the first chapter. These categories encompass both the gross and subtle elements of experience and language, with sound and speech as its essential factors, also falls within this systematic scheme. It is to be remembered that all the categories are derived ultimately from māyā, which is a malam and, therefore, acts as a fetter (pāśa)—albeit with the express purpose of aiding (together with karman) the ātman to realize its intrinsic, essential nature of consciousness. It was in this context that the beneficent role of māyā (and karman) was discussed. The principles are instruments of experience at the disposal of the consciousness which is man's defining feature. They aid man and only reflect what, in fact, makes possible their role, i.e., the ātman. They are essentially insentient and therefore are not the content of experience as such.

Experience is a privilege accorded to sentience, which is made to become dependent on the instruments of experience and to be involved in life in the world, in which language plays a prominent part.

The instrument of language is perhaps the most basic tool of experience which permeates all the other categories of experience as the common principle. This would be the
case insofar as language is said not only to 'reveal' itself but also to provide the means through which the categories of experience—including that of language itself—become intelligible to man. This is perhaps the Śaiva Siddhānta insight in postulating the category of nāda (sound), the essence of language and speech (vāk), as the first evolute of pure, unmixed (śuddha) māyā. It is from nāda that the śuddha-āśuddha-māyā evolves, which operates in close collusion with karman, to prepare the ground for man's involvement in the world. From this it follows that language not only functions as a tool of man's empirical life, but that it also has a role at the transcendental level of revealing man's essential nature. At this level, i.e., in the realm of the five śiva-tattvas, nāda is in 'closer' touch with the śakti—intrinsic to the nature of śivam—which is responsible, as already seen, for the evolution of māyā.

In view of the fact that man is 'condemned' to undergo worldly experience, and in view of the fact that perception (pratyakṣa) and inference (anumāna) cannot, by definition, reveal man's essential nature, verbal testimony (śabda)—which has its supreme expression in the Āgamas—serves as the indispensable tool which shows the possibility of a state of unfettered existence, identical with the knowledge of ultimate reality. What this means is that the key to liberation is language, the word, or sound as such.
Further, by definition nāda, even in its most subtle form, is not the content of the experience of ultimate reality, though it is necessary for the 'leap' from the realm of insentience to that of pure sentience. It is only the power of consciousness (cit-śakti), the means of knowledge and knowledge itself (as already seen), which is really the content of any experience as such. The impact of this realization is a step through language beyond language.

It is useful to recall two further points which are related to the Śaiva Siddhānta theory of language. Firstly, that the evolution of the scheme of categories is instigated by śakti and that in the order of the discovery and knowledge of the categories, man proceeds from the gross manifestations of māyā, such as the objects of the world, to the subtle ones, such as pure sound. Secondly, that the evolution of māyā has to be understood in the sense only of a change of state (vṛitti) of the one, self-identical material cause, and not as a transformation (paripāma) of it. The implication here, to repeat, is that the essential nature of sound, even in its purest form as nāda, is basically insentient (acit) with a role no less significant in the scheme than that, for example, of the buddhi. It may be said, in other words, that the significance of the role of the buddhi in relation to the subsequent categories, is comparable to that of nāda in relation to the categories up to kālā. It is to be noted,
nonetheless, that the role of nāda is most efficacious in
the highest realm of the categories which constitute man's
experience. Further, if man has to see the nature of things
as they are, it follows that the nature of pāsa is
'complete' with the knowledge and experience of nāda. In
this sense, the knowledge of nāda is a prerequisite for the
realization of the essence of man, which is distinct from
what constitutes the essence of the world.

Insofar as nāda stands for sound, it represents the
basic element of speech (vāk) which has its grossest
manifestation in man's everyday use of it. It is in this
sense that nāda and vāk may be seen as synonymous terms. In
keeping with the degrees or levels of manifestation,
characteristic of the evolution of the Śaiva Siddhānta
categories, speech or sound is also spoken of in terms of
subtle or gross forms. Śivāgrayogin speaks$^{97}$ of four such
levels which mark the evolution of speech: pasyantī-vāk is
nāda itself, which is the first modification of suddha-māyā
in the scheme of the categories, and it is the
differentiated speech principle in which the capacity for
revelation is inherent but not explicit; madhyamā-vāk is the
modification of speech that is an intermediary level, where
the dynamism or the manifestation of speech is in the mode
of thought; vaikhari-vāk is the uttered, articulated speech
of man. A fourth level is also postulated. It is called
parā-vāk, the unmanifested ground of all levels of speech
and represents the essence of speech itself. It is the seminal mode of speech, which is a speech beyond speech—if such metaphysical language may be employed—which inheres in the basic stuff of māyā. In this sense para-vāk is synonymous with āuddha-māyā which, as already seen, is also called bindu and kundalinī.

Śivāgrayogin furnishes a clear description of the significance of speech for man by giving the following account of its origin:

Śiva-tattva is the first modification of kundalinī which: is also called nāda; is of the nature of meaning; is the locus of the lord's sakti which manifests in degrees of great, greater, and greatest [what is] in the brightness of the cit in one who is desirous of liberation; is also the locus of kalās such as indhika, etc., which are limiting adjuncts; is also alone [responsible] for removing malam, having been controlled by it [the lord's sakti]; and is a modification of speech which is known as subtle. 98

From this syntactically pregnant construction several noteworthy points emerge. Language, which is based on sound (nāda) as such, is a double-edged sword insofar as it serves as a substrate not only for adjuncts of limitation, but is also the ground through which this limitation—which is due to malam—is lacerated. In this process, nāda may be said to open itself to the power which makes its own operation possible. It reveals its own essence by pointing to what gives it itself the means and power of expression, namely, cit-śakti. Nāda thus serves as the platform for the leap into transcendence or, by tearing itself up, permits a
withdrawal of cit-śakti’s association with it. It is the medium through which the śakti intrinsic to śivam, manifests itself in degrees depending on the intensity of the desire for liberation.99 Following from this point is the implication that while cit-śakti’s ability to effect its own dissociation from malam is potentially present—and eternally so, insofar as cit-śakti (as already seen) is essentially indestructible—the responsibility for the keen desire to be liberated from a limited and dependent existence, rests on man. In other words, a reflection on the nature of man's predicament at the empirical level points to freedom and liberation from bondage as such—a state which is essentially characteristic of the power of consciousness evident in perception, inference, and preeminently in śabda or Āgama (which alone gives an awareness of this possibility). It is man's own responsibility to see the wisdom of the word which, as the locus of śakti, can inflame to the greatest degree the consciousness of the one desirous of liberation.

The word as a category of revelation100 retains its special feature particularly in man's use of language, where its efficacy may be said to be consciously put to use. As is explicitly stated in the above quotation, the word in this context has the nature of meaning, i.e., there is an inextricable relation between a word and the meaning inherent in it.101 The significance of this point, which
evidently applies at the empirical level, is an extension of this essential role at the transcendental level as well. In both these realms, the following may be said to be the case: the meaning of a word is dependent on the word itself; whilst the word is of the nature of meaning, i.e., it points to what furnishes meaning, the word itself is incapable of effecting anything apart from the means through which meaning is revealed, i.e, cit-śakti as the pramāṇa; this is to say that the word is not the 'thing' it means, yet the word itself is indispensable for the knowledge of what ultimate reality is. In short, Śabda is man's instrument for what constitutes and yields meaning in life.

Śabda or verbal testimony is made up of words and Śivāgrayogin provides a definition of a word and its meaning in the context of the present discussion:

A collection of letters is called a word. Since letters perish instantaneously and since [therefore] there cannot be an apprehension of meaning, there is to be recognized--for the sake of apprehending meaning--such a thing called sphota within letters, which is eternal and which is the meaning of a word.102

Śivāgrayogin does not elaborate the theory of meaning known as sphota-vāda and a few brief remarks concerning it from the Śaiva Siddhānta perspective will not be out of place here.103 The theory is an intricate and elaborate one, and only a brief clarification will be attempted here for the purpose of the present discussion.

The word sphota is derived from the verbal root
sphut which, among several things, means: to burst or split open, to expand or blossom, and to appear suddenly. Applied in the context of language, sphota stands for the 'bursting forth' of the meaning of a word or sentence—a meaning which presents itself instantaneously and as a single unit.

Śivāgrayogin says above that this instantaneous capacity of meaning to burst forth through the word is eternal. In the light of what has already been said about the Śaiva Siddhānta essential nature of sound (nāda), the basis of verbal testimony, the letters themselves (which make up a word) are devoid of any power of their own. Whatever efficacy they may be said to have, has to be credited ultimately to śakti, the power inherent in consciousness (cit). This is to say that, as an evolute of māyā, nāda is 'perishable', although the stuff out of which it evolves remains as an insentient, eternal category. In other words, the eternality of sphota—which is always responsible for the meaning of a word—is to be seen as synonymous with śakti as the means of cognition and knowledge as such, i.e., the bursting forth of meaning is the thrust of cit-śakti revealing itself by illuminating the meaning inherent in the word. It is only this śakti that can rend the veil of ignorance about things as they are and, further, it is the means to obtain the knowledge which it in fact is, as already seen. In other words, inasmuch as the word is its meaning, cit is the śakti which makes possible what may be
called a two-in-one kind of knowledge: on the one hand, a knowledge of the word which points to a meaning and a knowledge of the word which is its meaning—the meaning inherent to it; and, on the other hand, the knowledge of both these as a single unit. This is equivalent to śakti pointing to cit and śakti being the cit to which it is intrinsic and essential, on the one hand, and, on the other hand, the unitary knowledge that this awareness is identical with the knowledge which distinguishes cit-śakti from insentience.

The question now is: in what precise sense is verbal testimony a means of knowledge in Śaiva Siddhānta? In the clear words of Śivāgrayogin the answer, which also defines man's use of language, is:

Valid verbal testimony is the knowledge which is the outcome of the words of a trustworthy person. A person who is one who sees things as they are and teaches them as they are, is called a trustworthy person.¹⁰⁴

In elaborating this basic definition, Śivāgrayogin says: "The statement of such a one is a group of words which possess mutual expectancy, compatibility, and proximity."¹⁰⁵ Mutual expectancy (ākāṅkṣā) is defined as: "the employment of the proper case suffixes, etc., in the syntax of this or that [statement]."¹⁰⁶ What this presupposes is a knowledge of grammar, and although Śivāgrayogin does not emphasize it the way in which the grammarians do¹⁰⁷, its significance for meaningfulness in man's use of language is evident. Another
definition he gives of mutual expectancy is interesting to note: it is "the desire for gaining knowledge." At least two points seem to be presupposed here: firstly, a desire on the part of a listener to know about the nature of a particular subject and, secondly, it presupposes that the one who teaches it, obtained the knowledge through an identical attitude. The second point, by extension, may be said to imply a desire on the part of the one who knows, to teach the knowledge that is gained. Implicit in all these points seems to be a theory of communication inherent in the Śaiva Siddhānta theory of language.

Compatibility (yogyatā) is defined negatively as: "the absence of the certainty that there is a lack of connection." Put in positive terms, this definition means that there should be an absence of any contradiction in what is said. The example that Śivāgrayogin gives in this context is the absurd and meaningless statement: "he sprinkles with fire" (agninā śīṇcati), instead of: "he sprinkles with water" (jalena śīṇcati). This definition of compatibility as what is intrinsic to meaningfulness in man's use of language, evinces the point that verbal testimony (śabda) should be made intelligible in terms of human experience and this applies particularly, as already indicated, to the transcendental truths of the Āgamas and Nigamas, if they are to have any use at all.

Proximity (sannidhi or āsatti) is defined as: "the
presence of two words uninterruptedly. By referring to two words, Śivagrayogin implies a complete sentence as, for example, the simple one: "Bring the cow" (gāṃ ānaya). That these words be uttered without a lapse of time and that they follow the rules of grammar—with the word for cow being in the accusative case in this instance—are essential factors of what constitutes meaningfulness in the use of language. In other words, a statement should be uttered in one grammatically correct sequential unit and it is this single, complete unit of speech (or language) that makes the meaning burst forth (sphota) and, thus, makes the truth of the statement evident. Whereas compatibility dealt with the grouping of compatible words, in order to avoid absurdity, proximity now defines the use of compatible words which should be uttered in an appropriate time sequence, for the meaning to become evident.

The above elements of meaningfulness are implicit in the use of language by a trustworthy person. Whereas in the ordinary use of language man's limitations are unavoidable, in the case of scriptural statements, however, this problem is said not to arise because the author is the supremely trustworthy lord of all beings (paśu-pati) who is incapable of erring. What is presupposed here is the traditional acknowledgement of scriptural authority as being infallible. Apparent 'errors' would have to be attributed to man's limitation in being able to grasp the truth of the
statements concerning reality itself. This does not preclude man's attempt to interpret and reinterpret these texts in a manner intelligible in terms of human experience—albeit in keeping with the intention of the author or speaker. In other words, a trustworthy person, in the nature of the case, has to be said, in tautological terms, to be trustworthy and, hence, credibility and meaningfulness have to be a priori assumed.

A point that is not explicitly stated by Śivāgrayogin in the context of the present discussion, but one which may be said to attest the eternality of scripture as such, is the 'readiness and maturity' of man to grasp the meaning of the truths expressed by a trustworthy person. It is life's experience in the world and a reflection on it—i.e., the awareness that without a desire for liberation, the recurrent cycle of worldly experience perpetuates itself—that prepares man to perceive the eternal wisdom which previously was meaningless. The desire for liberation, in Śaiva Siddhānta's terms, is a conscious attempt and effort on man's part to follow the behaviour and attitude of the Āgamic view of reality which promises the fruit of the labour, viz., the realization or experience of the nature of ultimate reality itself.

As a limited being involved in experiences which vindicate dependency, man is prone to error. An awareness of this fact—namely, man's fallibility—is a step towards a
realization of what trustworthiness means insofar as it not only leads to an understanding of the validity of verbal testimony (śabda) which has an infallible source, but it also serves as a means towards gaining a knowledge of things as they are. The only means through which man can know is through cit-śakti. Its association with the instruments of perception, inference, and verbal testimony is what limits it. Nonetheless, they are indispensable to man for life in the world and it is through these limiting adjuncts that error can creep into man's cognition of things. Śaiva Siddhānta has its own theory of error and insofar as it forms a part of the philosophical anthropology of the school, it will be useful to make a few brief remarks concerning it, in order to put into proper perspective this entire chapter which deals with the Śaiva Siddhānta theory of cognition.

3.5 Śaiva Siddhānta theory of error

Implicit in the concern with epistemology in Indian thought are theories of error, i.e., taking into account the generally accepted possibility of human fallibility, Indian thinkers sought to explain this phenomenon of man's life in the world. Indeed, the soundness or success of a theory of truth is commensurate with the success with which the fact of error is explained.\textsuperscript{113} Indian thinkers have propounded several theories of error and this study attempts to deal
with selected aspects from the Śaiva Siddhānta view of it.\textsuperscript{114} A few preliminary remarks will be useful to continue the attempt toward understanding man as a knowing and cognizing being in Śaiva Siddhānta.

In the light of the discussion on perception, inference and verbal testimony, the unique character of cit-śakti can hardly be over-emphasized: "since in every case, it has been established that cit-śakti alone has the nature of being the valid means of knowledge."\textsuperscript{115} Bearing in mind its special feature as the conscious principle in man, the responsibility for the occurrence of error in man's cognition cannot be put on cit-śakti—it only 'illuminates' the data obtained through the organs of cognition. If perception is accepted as man's most basic instrument of cognition, a description of this process would be the following. Cit-śakti provides the organs of the body with the ability to 'reach out' for the objects that come within their range. In other words, the internal organs (antab-karanas) 'go out' to an object via the sense organs (indriyas) which the internal organs in fact guide, through the power of consciousness (cit-śakti). On reaching the object, the internal organs assume the form of the object. In effect, and in summary, this situation is a mode or modification of the intellect (buddhi-vṛitti), subsequent to the indeterminate (nirvikalpaka) cognition that takes place, as already seen, in the mind (manas). This mode of the
intellect which takes on the form of the object, however, is not by itself sufficient to be called a case of cognition. It needs to be illumined by the ātman, which is the epitome of cit-śakti. In the context of Śaiva Siddhānta, there are a few points implicit in this summary description of cognition through perception.

The organs of the body are capable of functioning only in the presence of, or through the contact with, an object (viṣaya). What is presupposed here is the three-fold structure of cognition (tripūti-jñāna), viz., the ātman which cognizes, the object cognized, and the means through which the cognition takes place. In terms of Śaiva Siddhānta realism, the status of the object as 'real' needs to be acknowledged. Further, the self-validity (svatah-prāmāṇya) of the process of knowledge is a significant, fundamental thesis of Śaiva Siddhānta epistemology, as already seen. In other words, to ask how we know what we know, is to beg the question and to lead to an infinite regress in attempting to answer it. Whatever factor is responsible for the validity of cognition, is itself accepted at the very outset, i.e., it is the power of consciousness (cit-śakti) which, by definition, reveals itself, its object, and the consciousness (cit) in which the experience takes place. The question now is: where does the occurrence of error fit into the structure of man's process of cognition? The answer to this question is
especially significant if the intended seriousness of the
metaphysical foundations of Śaiva Siddhānta epistemology,
and of the system as a whole, are to have any philosophical
justification and credibility.

The answer, in fact, has already been provided in
the discussion concerning cit-śakti and the modification
(vṛitti) of the intellect (buddhi), in the first section of
this chapter. Two quotations may be repeated here for the
link and continuity they provide in the present context:

Cit-śakti which is free of doubt, etc., is
acknowledged as the valid means of cognition.

By the fact that it is impossible for cit-śakti to
be identified with a buddhi-vṛitti which is ridden
with doubt, etc., and since this would give rise to
a contradiction in the phrase "[cit-śakti] free of
that [doubt, etc.]", the meaning is: "only after
the conditioned buddhi-vṛitti is free of that
[doubt, etc.]", because this is the necessary
conclusion.117

It may be noted that the word "etc.," in both the above
quotations refers to misapprehension and memory, i.e., it is
cit-śakti which is devoid of doubt, misapprehension, and
memory that is verily the means of cognition, in the proper
sense of the term as Śaiva Siddhānta sees it. These three
factors (already defined above, pp.154-155) are the
limiting agents of man's intrinsic power of consciousness
(ātma-cit-śakti) and their efficacy is attributed to the
ātman's association with malam. What this means is that the
Śaiva Siddhānta theory of error involves a further
consideration of these factors in the context of the present
In the mechanics of cognition, as described above with reference to perception, the intellect (buddhi) is the decisive factor which determines the cognition of such and such an object presented to it via the senses, and illumined through the means of consciousness' power. The occurrence of cognition, therefore, is identical with the judgement passed by the intellect as regards what the object is said to be—it is to be noted that cit-śakti impartially permits the intellect to operate in this decisive role as regards the cognition of an object. It follows from this that the occurrence of error—whenever such a case is in point—is still an instance of a judgement passed by the intellect with regard to the object concerned. Now, the intellect (buddhi) is manifested through its modification (vṛitti) that moulds a judgement or decision. In the human context, this applies in every act of cognition and implies that cognition, by definition, is what is conditioned, coloured, and determined by the mode or modification of the intellect (buddhi-vṛitti). Further, this situation represents man's condition as a bound being (paśu) who is involved in life in the world within the periphery of what the intellect (buddhi) can determine, as regards the objects of experience which come within its range.

The need for man to undergo experience, as already seen, is to provide the ātman an opportunity for the
experience of the nature of things as they are.

Experiencing the world means knowing the world, seeing it as it is (the identity between experience and knowledge is intended here and will be taken up again in the next chapter). The cognitive experiences are a representation of the state of man's limited knowledge (kiñcijñatva) and these experiences themselves provide the possibility for man to get to know the nature of things as they really are. The symptom of man's limitedness is the restricted scope of the buddhi's role—which has its clear sign in the occurrence of error—and the cause for this condition is the effect of malam. The knowledge of this state of affairs is not given by perception and inference alone but as they apply, and optimally so, in the case of verbal testimony—credibility to which is accorded on the presupposition of such testimony having a trustworthy source. Ironically, it is the 'trained' buddhi itself—the buddhi involved in life in the world—that is made to arrive at this decisive conclusion (siddhānta) through the very power that is itself the means of man's cognitive experiences, viz., cit-śakti.

As indicated already, the intellect (buddhi) is man's indispensable instrument for life in the world, i.e., for the manifestation of the consciousness (cit) which constitutes man's essential nature. It is the experience of objects that broadens, as it were, the scope of the buddhi's function. Whilst this is in every case a limited
experience, experience itself furnishes the insight into the nature of things. It is an awareness of this condition, i.e., a reflection on man's limited state, that is the first step for the possibility of a conscious effort to eradicate a limited outlook through the very instruments which effect limitation. For man in the world, the journey through the different states of consciousness (ātma-avasthās) is plotted, so to speak, on the buddhi in the form of traces (saṃskāras) which the experiences leave behind. In this sense, the experiences either limit further or expand the efficacy of the buddhi, i.e., these experiences are directly responsible for the decisive role of the buddhi in subsequent experiences. This state represents a seemingly endless, recurrent cycle—a cycle which, as already seen, has a beginningless (anādi) origin—of experiences determining experiences.

The impact of the significance of this predicament needs to be seen together with the role of the category of karman, which operates in close collusion with man's categories of experience. The judgement concerning the nature of objects is based on experience, and the condition which determines the present situation under which man experiences the world is prārabdha-karman that operates inexorably, as already seen. Karman is the unseen (adriṣṭa) factor that accumulates through experience, and itself determines experience. It is built into the structure and
framework of man's experience. Further, it is reflected in the judgement which the buddhi passes as regards the nature of things. The occurrence of error, therefore, entails the role of karman as well.

Doubt, misapprehension, and memory are responsible for error in cognition, as already seen, and these are modes or modifications of the intellect. Their effect is that they limit the already limited function of the buddhi to the point of causing error. Error is the cognition of the object as "otherwise" (anyathā-khyāti), i.e., as what it is not. The occurrence of error is no reflection on the status of the object nor on the nature of consciousness which is made to cognize it erroneously. It may be noted in this context, that the existence, as such, of an object is not in question— it is only whether the cognition of it is valid or not, that is the issue here. When error occurs, it represents the condition or state of the buddhi alone. In other words, the object is as it is (yathā) and always so—and consciousness is the eternal principle that makes the occurrence of cognition at all possible. The only variable factor in the judgement of an object is the buddhi. It is assumed that whenever the buddhi passes a judgement concerning an object, that this judgement is valid. This does not preclude the possibility of a subsequent judgement which invalidates the previous one. This theory—without compromising the Śaiva Siddhānta contribution to the
analysis of error—is based on the intrinsic validity of knowledge (svataḥ-prāmāṇya), as already seen. This point may be seen more closely in the light of the following remarks on the three limiting agents of the buddhi.119

3.5 (a) **Doubt (saṃśaya)**

As already seen, doubt is the inability on the part of the buddhi to come to a conclusive judgement regarding an object. In terms of the description, given earlier, of determinate (savikalpaka) and indeterminate perception (nirvikalpaka-pratyakṣa), doubt would be a factor in the buddhi which mediates between the two. There are a few points involved in this situation. Insofar as a judgement cannot be reached concerning the object, one would have to admit that this itself is a judgement. Further, this judgement would have to be described as an indeterminate (nirvikalpaka) one. In the light of the description of the perception process, this state would represent a vague perception that usually takes place at the level of the mind (manas), as already seen. In this context, doubt would be a mental (māṇasa) perception which, in the nature of the case—taking into account the specific role of the mind (manas)—is an undecided or indeterminate one. In other words, the mind presents to the intellect different sets of data, all of which appear valid. It is the buddhi's role to pass judgement on the data and the decision it comes to is a
doubtful one. The cause for this would have to be attributed to the 'source' of the data, namely, the sense organs.

What these points mean is that the modification of the intellect (buddhi-vritti) is one of indecision or even error, since the object is not seen as it is. Cit-sakti only illuminates this condition of the buddhi. This is to say that doubt is a kind of cognition where the object is seen as otherwise (anyathā), and this point may be said to be what constitutes the factor of 'error'. It is the buddhi that is responsible for this and not the cit-sakti itself.

The solution to the doubt situation would be a subsequent cognition which resolves the ambiguity. Of course, this may itself be a repetition of the doubt situation and one may have to take recourse to inference or verbal testimony for an appropriate conclusion. What the situation of doubt emphasizes is the limitation of the human situation. It calls for a reflection on the nature of things as they are (yathā) and a discipline which promises, through training, a knowledge of the nature of ultimate reality. This point, which also applies to error due to misapprehension and memory, anticipates the discussion of the next chapter.

3.5 (b) Misapprehension (viparyaya)

Whereas doubt (saṃsāya) was seen to be a case of
oscillation between two alternatives—both of which may be erroneous—misapprehension (viparyaya), on the other hand, is a clear case of cognition where the object is taken to be something else (anyathā) as, e.g., mistaking a rope for a snake or perceiving silver in the mother-of-pearl. The knowledge of this error, of course, can only come from a subsequent perception of the same object, which contradicts the previous experience of it. What this case of error signifies is that as long as the original cognition is not vitiated by a subsequent one, the 'validity' of the original judgement concerning the object remains unquestioned.

This case of error, which only subsequently attests the incorrect view of an object, is not identical with the case of the error regarding the objects of dream experience. Whilst the dream objects appear real in the dream and are only subsequently realized as having been unreal, in the case of error through misapprehension, on the other hand, the sense organs are involved in both the original misapprehension and also in the subsequent apprehension. Their similarity lies only in that both are invalidated by subsequent experiences and that both retain their 'validity' as long as they are not contradicted.

As in the case of doubt, here, too, in the case of misapprehension, the cit-sakti is not responsible for the fact that the senses perceive aspects unrelated to the nature of the object concerned.
3.5 (c) **Memory (smṛiti)**

In saying that memory is a case of error, the Siddhāntin implies that it is not a means or instrument of valid cognition. This point is a consequence of the conditions which have to be fulfilled, as already pointed out, for a means of cognition to be valid. The condition which rules out the case of memory as such a means, is that memory does not furnish a cognition that is new. As is clear from the definition already given (p. 154 above), memory is merely the revival of impressions of past experience. On this theory, the 'correctness' of the memory, i.e., the recollection of the past experience, is itself not in question. The point is that the object of cognition to which the memory refers, is not immediately open to verification, i.e., it is not presented as such, as an object, to sense perception—the most basic instrument of cognition and the ground for the validity of cognition as such.

Further, memory implies an original perception which, at the time it occurred, may have been valid. The impressions of this experience are retained in man's psychological complex, viz., the citta, and are subsequently recalled. But the memory of the recalled experience is not itself a perception and, hence, the status of memory is in question here.
The specific context of these criticisms notwithstanding, i.e., that memory constitutes a case of erroneous or non-valid cognition in the sense explained above, the positive significance of memory may be noted—which does not apply to the other two cases of error already discussed. As seen earlier, memory collaborates with perception in cases of valid inference as, for example, it is the memory of the universal concomitance (vyāpti) between smoke and fire, that leads to the conclusion of the presence of fire, on the basis of the perception of smoke (it may be repeated that memory alone is insufficient for this conclusion, as pointed out in the discussion on subsumptive reflection, parāmarśa, p. 197 above). Its role here is obviously a positive one insofar as inference is regarded as a valid means of cognition. However, memory per se is for all intents and purposes, a case of error for the Siddhantin.

3.6 Summary

In all three cases of error, the question still remains as to why they occur in the forms they do. In some cases, it could evidently be due to some extraneous cause, such as defective eyesight. The basic question, however, applies here as well: why is man in a condition such that objects are not seen as they are? That man is a being who possesses limited knowledge (kiñcijjña) is not itself the
answer, insofar as it points to the question about the cause for this limitation itself. For the Siddhāntin, the root cause is malam, as already seen, and the cases of error are only the signs that point to it. The instruments of cognition—which presupposes that the roles of māyā and karman are in operation—afford the ātman, i.e., man's essential nature characterized as consciousness, a scope to manifest itself. In so doing, it copes with the otherwise overwhelming role of malam. Every instance of experience, which is invariably a case of knowledge about the nature of things implies, as already seen, a removal of the veil of ignorance caused by malam—in this context, malam and ignorance (avidyā, ajñāna) are used synonymously. Although the removal of this veil is partial, insofar as man's knowledge is limited by the role of the instruments of cognition, nonetheless, a glimpse is provided into the nature of things. The only means, in the proper sense of the term, through which this takes place is cit-śakti.

The limitation of man's knowledge determined by the role of the intellect's modifications (buddhi-vṛittis), points to the significance of the buddhi's function. It was seen in the first chapter that the basic quality of the buddhi is what is called sattva-gupa, the quality responsible for calmness, tranquility, and clarity of experience as such. These features are positive ones and imply that when this basic quality essential to the buddhi
predominates, then the factors of error are practically non-existent. In other words, it is the mode of the buddhi dominated by the quality responsible for clarity, which is the ideal medium for the manifestation and expression of man's powers of consciousness (ātma-cit-śakti) and results, thereby, in the knowledge of things as they really are.

The realization of this feature of the cit-śakti is crucial for the Śaiva Siddhānta understanding of man. It is the outcome of a transcendental reflection on man's role as a cognitive being undergoing the states of consciousness which constitute life in the world. Such a transcendental reflection implies a discipline and training, identical with a conscious effort on the part of man to exploit the categories and instruments of experience at man's disposal, to their full capacity. In this process, man's consciousness (ātma-cit-śakti) may be said to be unleashed furnishing, thereby, a knowledge of man's essential nature as opposed to the nature of insentience, on the one hand and, on the other hand, revealing man's essential nature in relation to the ultimate reality of Śivam as the underlying principle of existence as such. Here Śaiva Siddhānta philosophical anthropology and Śaiva Siddhānta theology meet. The next chapter attempts to deal with the discipline which leads to this wisdom of the Āgamas.
The special emphasis on pramāṇyavāda (epistemology) marks a significant phase in the very early development of the systems of Indian thought, with its strong rationalistic tendency. Closely related to this is the emergence of sūtra literature, and particularly the commentaries on them. Jaimini's Mīmāṃsasūtra is traditionally believed to have been the earliest, it is by far the longest, and is assigned the date of about A.D. 200.

In this context one can speak of the soteriological function of epistemology in Indian thought. Cf., also M. Hiriyanna, Outlines, pp. 182-183, when he says, speaking about the results or aims of the means of cognition: "...what the Indians aspired after in philosophy was not a mediate knowledge of the ultimate truth but a direct vision of it ..." and the "insistence that one should not rest content with a mere intellectual conviction but should aim at transforming such conviction into direct experience." See also his book Values, p. 27, where he is concerned with the nature of knowledge as a fact of mental life or with its validity as pointing to an object beyond itself.

There is a great deal of difference among the schools of Indian thought over the number (and nature) of the means of valid cognition. See note 48 below.

Speaking about jñāna and pramā, D.M. Datta, The Six Ways of Knowing (Calcutta: University of Calcutta, 1960), p. 19, says: "Consequently knowledge, strictly speaking, should always stand for a cognition that is true, uncontradicted or unfalsified. The ordinary division of knowledge into true knowledge and false knowledge should, therefore, be considered as an instance of loose thinking; the word true as applied to knowledge would then be a tautology, and the word false positively contradictory--false knowledge being only a name for falsified knowledge, which is another name for no knowledge."

Cf. K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, p. 297: "When self too knows itself and knows other selves and their knowledge, its knowledge is not of the epistemologically cognisable category of pramāṇa." Also, ibid., "...there is no pramāṇa by which to know God except as he is revealed to self by Śivaśakti; the 'means' and the 'end' of knowledge coincide there."
6 In the light of what has already been pointed out, the word mithyā-jñāna should be construed as "erroneous cognition" rather than 'erroneous knowledge'.

7 The question for the Nyāya school, whose favourite topic is one of pramāṇas, is not how knowledge comes to be true or false but how we become aware of its truth or falsity, for which we require fruitful activity (saṁvādi pravṛtti) as an additional condition, i.e., its appeal to facts. Thus, for Nyāya all knowledge is either true or false, there being no 'neutral' knowledge—doubt is a kind of knowledge that one has, the truth or falsity of which is not yet seen.

8 M. Monier-Williams, op.cit., s.v., pramāṇa.

9 Ibid.


11 Yan-meyāṁ na hi tan-mānaṁ yato mānena mīyate. Pa৷uskara Agama, 7:12, quoted ibid. Also in SB, p. 19, and p. 97. This quotation is repeated in the context of the discussion, p. 168 below.


13 Na caṅśuḥ śabda-sāṁvittau na śrotram rūpa-vedane / Sarvatra grāhikā śaṁvit-saiva mānam-ato matam // Pa৷uskara Agama, 7:15, quoted ibid., p. 5.

14 Tac-ca cic-chaktir-eva. Ibid., p. 4.

15 Tatra pramāṇa-śaṁśaya-laksanāṁ tu saṁśaya-viparyaya-śmṛiti-vyatirikta pramāṇa-paraparyāyā ātma-cic-chaktir-iti. Ibid., p. 2. This point is on the authority of the Pa৷uskara Agama (7:4) statement which Śivāgrayogin quotes, ibid.: "Cit-sakti which is devoid of doubt, etc., is said to be the means of valid cognition" (Saṁśaya-ādi-vinirmukta cic-chaktir-mānam-ucyate). See section 3.5 below for details as to why memory, doubt and misapprehension have to be excluded.

16 Tatra saṁśayo nāma sādhāraṇa-dharma-darśanāt-koti-dvaya-avalaṁbini buddhiḥ yathā sthānur-vā puruṣo vety-ādi. Ibid., p. 2.

17 Viparyayasya tusatasmiṁs-tad-buddhiḥ yathā śuktikāyāṁ
The discussion beginning here follows Śivāgrayogin's argument closely, with practically a word by word translation and exegesis. In the original, the discussion goes on into several pages, SB pp. 95-98, and for the sake of convenience his entire argument is given in Appendix 3—the specific sentences are referred to in the notes that follow. The section dealt with here is entitled "Defining cit-sakti's validity as the means of cognition." The discussion ends on p.175 below. See also note 47 below.

21 See Appendix 3, the sentence beginning: "Tvam-mate cic-chaktir-eva..."

22 Ibid., "Cakṣumādy-asannikarse'pi..."

23 Ibid., "Saṁśaya-viparya-āśāder-api..."

24 See also K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, p. 299: "This means that the advocate of cit-sakti is not very far from including the senses also under pramāṇa."

25 See Appendix 3, "Na-adyaḥ sukha-ādiṣu ...

26 Ibid., "Na dvitiyāḥ ...

27 The term paramāraśa is a logical one and the Nyāya school provides a clear definition of it:

"Paramāraśa (subsumptive reflection) is a cognition which cognizes the presence of the invariably concomitant factor denoted by the middle term (probans) in the thing denoted by the minor term. For instance, the cognition, "This mountain has smoke which is invariably concomitant with fire" is a subsumptive reflection; and the cognition resulting from it and taking the form "mountain has fire" is inferential cognition." S. Kuppuswami Sastrī, Indian Logic, op. cit., p. 188. The significance of the term is evident in the following two clarifications: "Paramāraśa is a complex cognition which arises from a combination of the knowledge of invariable concomitance (vyāptijñāna) and that of the presence of the reason (hetu) in the subject (pakṣa) --technically known as pakṣadharmatājñāna. In the stock example of inference--"The hill has fire; because it has smoke", the paramāraśa takes the form--"The hill has smoke, which is invariably concomitant with fire" (vahnivyāpyadhūmāvān parvataḥ); and it is contended by the
Naiyāyikas that, in the absence of such a parāmarśa, anumiti does not arise." Ibid., p. 194. See also Ibid., p. 196: "...the Naiyāyikas insist that subsumption is the essential feature of inference and insist therefore that every anumiti should be taken to be preceded by parāmarśa which is but a subsumptive reflection subsuming the smoke in the hill under the pre-established vyāpti."

28See Appendix 3, the sentence beginning: "Tasya atīta-anāgata ..."

29Ibid., "Ata eva na tṛitīyaḥ ..."

30Ibid., "Na ca kāraṇa-antara ..."

31Ibid., "Evām sati sarvasya-api ..."

32Ibid., "Karma-ādāv-ativyāptēś-ca. Karma-ādikam-api anena rūpepa karaṇam-eva ..." This argument may be said to refute both the Nyāya and the Grammarians' standpoints, where the results of acts performed are loosely taken as instruments of acts. There are five kinds of karman in Nyāya (see S. Kuppuswami Sastri, Indian Logic, p. 34 and p. 263): utkṣepaṇa (the act of throwing upwards); avakṣepaṇa (throwing downwards); ṛkuṇcana (the act of bending); prasāraṇa (stretching); and gamana (moving). Pāṇini (1.4,49) talks of four kinds of karman: nivartya (when anything new is produced, e.g., he makes a mat); vikārya (implying change as, e.g., reducing fuel to ashes or, e.g., fashioning gold into a ring); prāpya (when any desired object is attained, e.g., going to the village); and anīpsita (when an undesired object is abandoned, e.g., he leaves the wicked).

33See Appendix 3, the two sentences beginning from: "Tathā sati rūpa-ādy ..."

34See note 27 above.

35K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, p. 302.

36See Appendix 3, the sentence beginning: "Cakṣur-ādy-avyāptēḥ ..."

37See also K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, p. 303. Śivāgrayogin's argument here is based on what the Pauṣkara Āgama (7:19-21) says. The translation of the verses which appear in Appendix 3 is: "Now, who would not acknowledge a collection [of causes] since a pot is ascertained only when there is [the collection] beginning with the cognizer and ending with the pot? There would be a suspension of the common usage of the cognizer, the cognized, etc., [here] since it is
established that the cognizer, the means of cognition and the thing cognized are included in that [collection]--apart from these, there is no collection to be seen."

38See Appendix 3, the paragraph beginning: "Atrocyate ..."

39Ibid., the two sentences beginning from: "Cakṣur-ādi-karaṇaka-buddhi ...

40K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, p. 306.

41See p.154 above for their definitions.

42See Appendix 3. This line is a slight variation of the same quoted in Śivāgrayogin's Saivaparībhāṣā, op.cit., p. 6. There the word vibhinnā is used instead of vinirmuktā here, without any semantic difference.

43On a point of grammar and semantics, the editor of the text suggests that the word saṃśaya should be read as saṃśayatva, because it is logical to say that one should speak of a buddhi-vṛitti which is doubting the nature of an object, rather than it being "identified with doubt". In other words, even when a buddhi-vṛitti is under the influence of doubt, there is still a manifestation of an object, the nature of which is in doubt. This manifestation itself is on account of cit-śakti and it is inadmissible to identify cit-śakti with the doubting buddhi-vṛitti. See next note for the exact sentence in question.

44See Appendix 3, the sentence beginning: "Cic-chakteḥ saṃśaya-ādi buddhi-vṛitti ...

45Ibid., the sentence beginning: "Na caivaṃ buddhi-vṛitti ...

46Ibid., the sentence beginning: "Buddhi-jaqatvena ...

47Ibid., the sentence beginning: "Atra buddhi-padena ..." Śivāgrayogin quotes Mrigendra Ṛgama 11:8 to justify this statement. The translation of this verse which appears in Appendix 3 is: "This light of buddhi, which has the nature of determination and dispositions, is known as intelligence, because it is the source of the manifestation of the paṣu's intelligence." In a footnote to the text, the editor of the text points out that the "light of buddhi" is to be understood as the vṛitti of buddhi, which is the cause for the production of cognition in man. It is only in this sense that the buddhi appears as the "light" which in fact is derived from cit-śakti.

This concludes the section that closely follows Śivāgrayogin's commentary, supplied in Appendix 3. See also
There is no general consensus in the schools of Indian thought about the number (and nature) of the means of cognition. Thus, the Carvaka accepts the priority only of sense perception (pratyakṣa); the Buddhists and Vaiśeṣikas accept only two, adding inference (anumāna) to perception; Sāṅkhya, Śaiva Siddhāntins, and Viṣṇu Advaitins accept only three, including scriptural authority or verbal testimony (śabda, śruti) in the list; the Nyāya schools accepts only four, including comparison (upamaṇa); the Prabhakara Mīmāṃsakas accept only five, including presumption or the supposition of a fact (arthāpatti); the Advaitins accept the six of the Bhaṭṭa Mīmāṃsakas which includes non-cognition or non-apprehension (anupalabdhi or abhava) in the list; some schools accept nine by adding equivalence (sambhava), tradition or fallible testimony (aithiha), and gesture (cestā). The Paurāṇikas accept only eight, excluding the last one mentioned in the list.

It is to be noted that for the Siddhāntin, only cit-śakti deserves the label of being a means of valid cognition, in the Śaiva Siddhānta sense of the term as already seen. Whilst the term "means" is also used here for the three means of valid cognition accepted by the Siddhāntin, its derivative sense is to be noted, i.e., perception, inference and verbal testimony serve as means of cognition only through the cit-śakti which makes their operation possible.

Note 20 above.

49 It is to be noted that for the Siddhāntin, only cit-śakti deserves the label of being a means of valid cognition, in the Śaiva Siddhānta sense of the term as already seen. Whilst the term "means" is also used here for the three means of valid cognition accepted by the Siddhāntin, its derivative sense is to be noted, i.e., perception, inference and verbal testimony serve as means of cognition only through the cit-śakti which makes their operation possible.

50 Tatra sākṣātkāri-pramāṇa-pratyakṣam. SB, p. 108.


53 ...sarvam saṅkalpaka-jñānam śabdollekhi. SB, p. 110.


56 Śivaśrayogin, ibid., pp. 8-9, speaks of six kinds of association (saṁbandha) between a sense organ and an object. These constitute varying levels of cognition which may be enumerated below:

a) The relation which is a mere conjunction
(saṃyoga) between the sense organ and the object, e.g., when there is a simple cognition of an object such as a pot.

b) The relation of inherence in the conjoined (saṃyukta-samavāya), e.g., the cognition of the generality and its quality (such as being the colour blue).

c) The relation of inherence in what is inherent in the conjoined (saṃyukta-samaveta-samavāya), e.g., the cognition of the quality-ness of the object, such as the blueness of the pot.

d) The relation of inherence (samavāya), e.g., hearing inherently implies the cognition of sound.

e) The relation of inherence in what is inherent (samaveta-samavāya) e.g., the cognition of soundness from the cognition of sound.

f) The relation of qualification and the qualified (vīṣeṣa vīṣeṣya-bhava), e.g., the cognition of non-existence as inherent in the object which serves as the qualification of the object or as its substrate.

Cf. V.A. Devasenapathi, Śaiva Siddhānta, p. 30, says that the Siddhāntin "does not accept this classification as it is based on the view that perception is generated solely by the contact of the sense with object." See also note 54 above.

57...mala-āvaraṇa-vaśāt-sva-niṣṭha-api sā kalayā vyāñjitā avidyayā viṣaya-abhimukhi-kṛita rāgeṇa rañjitā ca satī antar-karaṇa bāhyendriya-dvārā ātman-bhogāya bāhya-arthe pravartate. Śaivaparibhaṣa, pp. 7-8.

58 This point will be dealt with in the next chapter.


60 Yogi-jñānaṁ nāma atīta-anāgata-vartamāna-sakṣātkāraḥ. SB, pp. 19-20.


62 Tatra nirapekṣam cit-prakāśa-rūpaṁ. SB, p. 111.

63 At the transcendental level referred to here, the distinctions of pāśa-jñāna, paśu-jñāna, and ātma-jñāna are a matter of experience (anubhava, bhoga) which, in the nature of the case, is in fact inadequately expressible in terms of the categories of man's fettered existence. The distinctions serve only a descriptive attempt, in the light of the philosophical presuppositions of Śaiva Siddhānta, to
make the transcendental realm intelligible within man's limited scope.

64 (Tatrendriya-anta-karana-nirapekha-nirasta-bandhayah


66 It may be noted here that cit-sakti as a prama¯na at the transcendental level presupposes a knowledge of its own nature as constituting the knowledge which it itself perceives or experiences. The knowledge about the possibility of such a perception is derived from scripture or from teachers. The knowledge derived through inference, on the other hand, is grounded in experience and life in the world which determines its validity as, e.g., it is perception which verifies the inference of fire from smoke. Whilst the same word, pratyaks¯a, is used for both these two kinds of perception, the essential difference between them, as already seen in the previous section, is to be noted.

67 Tatra vyaptir-nama sadhya-sadhanayor-anaupadhihaka¯h
sambandha¯h. Saivaparibhasa, p. 9. Sivagrayogin's
definition of what constitutes an adventitious condition is:
"And an adventitious condition is the being pervasive of the probandum while not being pervasive of the probans, e.g., the association, etc., with wet fuel [the adventitious condition] when the smoke is to be proved by fire. It [the adventitious condition] is pervasive of the smoke, the probandum, on account of existing wherever there is smoke. It is not pervasive of the fire, the probans, on account of not existing in an iron ball, etc., which possess fire. And this is the ascertained adventitious condition."
(Upadhis-ca sadhana-avyapakatve sati sadhya- vyapakatvam. Yathavahinam dhume sadhye ardrendhana-samyoga-adib. Sa hi sadhysya dhumasya vyapaka¯h, dhumavati sarvartha vritte¯h.
Sadhanyasya vahner-avyapakahu, vahnimaty-ayo-golaka- adav-vritteh. Ayam ca niścito-padhih.)
Saivaparibhasa, p.10.

68 Anumanam dīgha-vyāptya paroksha-artha-avabodhakam.
Paukara Agama, 7:37, quoted ibid., p. 9.


70In Śivāgrayogin's own words: "Thus you are self-contradictory because your words are used in the form of an inference [itself]." (Asyaiva tvādiya-vacanasya-anumāna-prayoga-rūpatvena sva-vyāhateḥ) Ibid., p. 14.


72Na ca vyāpti-grahasya kāraṇasya-abhāvena-anumāna-pravṛittir-eva na sambhavati iti yuktam. Ibid.

73Anāgata-ādi-viṣayake vyāpti-grahe manasaś-cakṣur-āder-vā sāmarthyasya klīṣiptatvān-na-tasya pratyakṣatva-anupapattiḥ. Ibid.

74...vahni-dhūmayoh vyāpti-grahaṇa-anantaram parvata-ādau vyāpya-liṅga-darśanād-vahny-ādy-anumānam. Śaivaparibhāṣā, p. 10. On this point the Siddhāntin seems to follow the Nyāya view that inference takes place as involuntarily as the sudden perception of a thing. For the Advaitin, on the other hand, inference takes place either when there is a doubt or, at least, when there is a want of knowledge regarding what is to be inferred. See D.M.Datta, op. cit., p. 230 and p. 231.

75Here Śaiva Siddhānta follows the Nyāya school in accepting five members necessary for a valid inference. Śivāgrayogin quotes Paśkara Āgama 7:37-40 as his authority. The five components as he mentions them in Śaivaparibhāṣā, pp. 10-11 are: (1) the proposition or assertion to be proved (pratijñā), e.g., there is a fire on the hill; (2) the reason (hetu) for the assertion as, e.g., because the hill has smoke on it; (3) the example or instance (udāharaṇa or dṛiṣṭānta) that serves as the reason, e.g., wherever there is smoke, there is fire, as in the fire-place; (4) the application (upanaya) of the invariable concomitance between the smoke and the fire, as in the case of seeing smoke on the mountain; and (5) the conclusion or restatement of assertion (nigamaṇa) in the light of the application of the invariable concomitance as, e.g., therefore, there is a fire on the hill.

76Cf. also Datta, op.cit., p. 218: "In inference, it is not
always the case that the premises are given and the conclusion is to be found. It is very often the case that the conclusion is presented first to the mind, and we are required to find the premises that justify it. This latter process is mostly in evidence when we adduce arguments in justification of our instinctive beliefs. The order of reasoning, therefore, may take either form; the premises first and the conclusion last, or the conclusion first and the premises last. In the latter case it is, of course, a misnomer to call the proposition proved a conclusion. It should rather be called a probandum, for until the premises are adduced it is not a conclusion but only a proposition to be proved. Hence the Indian logicians call it a pratijña (probandum)."

77See note 27 above.

78The aim of the discussion on inference in this section is only to show its validity as a means of cognition (in the special Śaiva Siddhānta sense of the term pramāṇa) as defended by Śivāgrayogin. For this purpose, it has not been necessary to deal with the intricate details of inference which presupposes a thorough acquaintance with the development of Indian logic. Thus, further details, e.g., of hetvābhāsa, which entail an elaborate clarification of the sādhya, sādhana, and hetu, together with the term pakṣata, are beyond the scope of this study.


80Tat-prāmāṇye ca tan-mūlakasya saṅgati-grahasyopapatter-nigama-āgama-ādir-āpi pramāṇam. Ibid.


82Śadbas-tu pāramparyeṇa śivajñāna-anumāpakaḥ. Pauskara Āgama 7:74, quoted in Śaivaparibhāṣā, p. 23.

83Cf. also: "...the word 'āgama' can be taken to imply the handing down of knowledge from teacher to pupil, and thus to denote traditional (sampradāya) knowledge. Then the word 'āgama' can be taken to mean what the Āgamas stand for." V. Varadachari, Āgamas, p. 10. The following is also noteworthy: "A Science which comes from teacher to disciple from time immemorial is called Āgama. That which gives needed knowledge and describes the means for the welfare in this world as well as in the other is called Tantra. Any methodically arranged collection of Texts or verses is
called Śaṁhitā. So Āgama or Tantra or Śaṁhitā speak about the same variety of Texts." N.R. Bhatt's Introduction to Kamikāgama (Madras: C. Swaminatha Gurukkal, 1975), p. i.

84 "From a very early stage in the history of Indian Philosphic speculation, there would seem to have been two currents of thought, the Vedic and the Āgamic, apparently independent and antagonistic. It is not possible to fix definitely the period when the Āgamas came into being. Some of them that exist now go in for a criticism of Jainism and Buddhism, the Śāṁkhyā and the Mīmāṁsā and the Advaita Vedānta, and could have been evolved only after these systems; but some at least of these, the Pāśupata and the Pāñcarātra Āgamas, should have been current before the compilation of the Vedānta Sūtras, as those two systems are refuted by Bādarāyaṇa in the second pāda of the second chapter of the Sūtras." S.S. Suryanarayana Sastri, The Śivādvaita of Śrikaṇtha, (Madras: University of Madras, 1972), p. 1.

85 "It has been suggested that the Āgamic systems were developed out of the Brāhmaṇas in the same way as the Upaniṣads, though at a much later stage, and that some of the later Upaniṣads like the Śvetāśvatara, which address the Supreme Being by a sectarian title and not param Brahma as of yore, probably grew up under the shadow of the Āgamas." Ibid., pp. 1-2. See also ibid., p. 3 where the writer quotes and translates the following Āgamic passages which claim Vedic authority for their doctrine:

"Śiddhānto vedasāratvāt, "as the siddhānta consists of the Veda": (Suprabhedāgama).
Vedasāram idān tantra, "this tantra is of the essence of the Veda": (Makutāgama).
Vedānțārtham idān jñānām siddhāntam paramaṁ śubham, "This siddhānta knowledge which is the significance of Vedanta is supremely felicitous": (Makutāgama).
" Cf. also V. Varadachari, op.cit., p. 12: "The Āgamas have an independent development of theory and practice and should be taken as a system of philosophy and religion based on the Vedas. The theoretical side represents a continuation of the results of philosophical enquiries which the Vedas deal with. The controversies and discussions which mark these enquiries are left out in the Āgamas. Greater attention is paid here to the cultural discipline which is sought to be inculcated through practical religion." As regards the date of Āgamas, the writer just quoted says, ibid., p. 42: "Anyway, the Mahābhārata which must have taken a specific shape by 3000 B.C. should justify this date as the lowermost limit for the prevalence of the Āgamic doctrines."

86 The three branches are: Śaivism with its Śaiva Āgamas
which consider Śiva as the supreme deity; Vaishnavism with its Vaishnava Agamas which consider Viṣṇu as the supreme deity; and Śaktism with its Śakti Agamas which consider Sakti or the Goddess as the supreme deity. Whilst there are several features which are common to all Agamic literature—including the debate on its validity—the discussion here pertains to the 28 Agamas, and the numerous subsidiary Agamas (upāgamas) basic to the Śaiva Siddhānta school. The research by the French Institute of Indology in Pondichery, India, has thrown a great deal of light to allay the allegation that the names and contents of these Agamas are largely legendary. See the complete list provided in N.R. Bhatt (ed.) Rauravāgama, table 1, facing p. xix, and the numerous publications of Agamas, either in part or in full (apart from those which are still in MS form) which bear evidence to the fact that these Agamas did indeed exist.

It is clear that the problem turned into a philosophical issue at least as early as the tenth century. Yāmunācārya (918-1038), predecessor and grand teacher of Rāmaṇuja, wrote a special treatise justifying the validity of the Agamas in his Āgama-prāmāṇya. Although his is a defence of the Vaishnava Pāñcarātra Agamas, the question of validity applies to Agamas in general. It has been said about Yāmunācārya's work that: "Though short, this is perhaps the only early work solely devoted to this question." M. Narasimhachary (ed.), Āgama-prāmāṇya of Yāmunācārya (Baroda: University of Baroda, 1976), p. xiii. An earlier edition with a translation preceded this critical edition: J.A.B. van Buitenen, Yāmuna's Āgama Prāmāṇya, (Madras: Ramanuja Research Society, 1971).

Some of the issues are: that the Agamas go against the Vedas by strongly recommending the exclusive worship of one specific deity; that contrary to Vedic practice, the Agamas permit women and people of all castes to perform worship; and that in addition to the sacred thread initiation (upanayana) the Agamas, without Vedic injunction, make mandatory a second qualification for worship, called dīkṣā (initiation).

This is the reason why Yāmunācārya also defends the Pāñcarātra Agamas in his Āgama-prāmāṇya. See M. Narasimhachary, op.cit., Preface p. xiii.

This quotation also makes evident the difference in the elaborate debate
between, for example, the Mīmāṃsāka view that the Veda is eternal and cannot be said to be composed by any being (apauruṣeya), and the Śaiva view here that both the Veda (Nīgama) and the Āgama are the work of the supreme lord (Paramesvara, i.e., Śiva) "the supremely trustworthy person."

92 Bearing in mind that the Āgamas were taught by Śiva, the point here may be said to be a legitimate extension of the following: "The first Rṣis realised dharma, that is, they acquired it. It is implied that they acquired the Mantras also, without being taught by anybody. Their successors were of inferior calibre and could not realise the dharma nor acquire the Mantras by themselves ... When they [the Rṣis] saw the gradually decreasing capacity of the later generations, they diversified the Veda for the sake of facility in learning. They also handed down the auxiliary sciences of the Vedas (the Vedāṅgas)." K.A. Subramania Iyer, Bhartṛhari (Poona: Deccan College, 1969), p. 95.

93 Iti vastu-trayasya-asya prāk-pāda-kṛita-saṁsthiteḥ / Caryā-yoga-kriyā-pādair-viniyogo'bhidasyate //Mrigendra Āgama, 2:8, p. 68. I am indebted to Pandit N.R. Bhatt of the French Institute of Indology, Pondichery, for this reference and the point made here.

94 This point represents an obvious rejection of the śabda-brahmavādin's standpoint, viz., that the essence of speech or sound is the ultimate reality. For the Śaiva Siddhānta rejection of this theory, see also K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, p. 229.

95 See chapter one, p. 32 above.

96 Ibid., p. 32 above.

97 SB, p. 149.


99 This point has a direct bearing on the soteriology of Śaiva Siddhānta theology, which will be dealt with in the next chapter.

100 This phrase is the title of an article by K. Sivaraman which deals with the Śaiva Siddhānta theory of nāda especially in the light of Nāda Kārikā by Rāmakaṇṭha (12th

101 Cf. also: "With the emergence of the word emerges the meaning and not vice versa. It is the word which has to be used even when the meaning has to be explained." K. Sivaraman, Saivism, p. 229.


103 The speculations on language in the āstika schools of India may be said to be the following three important theories of meaning that, as a consequence, have been propounded: anvitābhidhānavādā, advocated by Prabhākara; abhīhitānvyavādā, advocated by the Nyāya school generally, by Kumarilā, and by the Advaitins (including Śaṅkara, though he nowhere mentions it specifically); and sphotoavādā, generally held by the grammarians, especially Bhartṛihari (Maṇḍana Miśra is also a staunch upholder of the doctrine and in his Sphoṭasiddhi he defends it from attacks by Kumārila and Śaṅkara). According to the first theory, the words of a sentence simultaneously retain their individual meanings in conjunction with one another, while at the same time produce a single constructed meaning of the whole sentence, i.e., the collection of words gives a unitary sense of the sentence. According to the second theory, the words hold their individual meanings in isolation but subsequently combine (sahghāta) to express a single sentence-meaning, i.e., the recollection of the meanings of individual words gives a unitary sense. According to the third theory a sentence is an indivisible unit (akhaṇḍa), presenting or thrusting forth itself as such (sphoṭa) and the meaning of a sentence as a whole, as a single unit, is achieved through a flash of insight or intuition (pratibhā) --thus, a sphotoavādin is a vākyavādin, with the emphasis on the sentence as a whole. For further details, see especially: G. Sastri, The Philosophy of Word and Meaning, Calcutta: Sanskrit College, 1959; K. Kunjunni Raja, Indian Theories of Meaning, Madras: Adyar Library, 1963; G. Kaviraj, Aspects of Indian Thought, Burdwan: University of Burdwan, 1966; and K.A. Subrahmanya Iyer, Bhartṛihari, Poona: Deccan College, 1969.

105 **Tad-vākyam tu ākāṅkṣā-yogyatā-sannidhi-matām padāṇām samūhaḥ. Ibid.**

106 **Ākāṅkṣā ca tat-tad-anvaya-anukūla-vibhakty-ādi-samabhī-vyāhāraḥ. SB, p. 20.**

107 **Cf. the following quotations from K. Raghavan Pillai (ed. and tr.) The Vākyapādīya (Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1971), p. 3: “Arthapravṛitti-tattvānāṁ śabdā eva nibandhanam / Tattvāvabodhaḥ śabdānāṁ nāsti vyākaraṇādīrāte. Words are the sole guide to the truths about the behaviour of objects; and there is no understanding of the truths about words without grammar. Taddvāramapavargasya vāh malānāṁ cikitsitam / Pavitraṁ sarvavidyānāmaḥhīvidyāṁ prakāśate. A gateway to liberation, a cure to the blemishes of speech, purifier of all (other) disciplines, it shines as being applied to them. Yathārthajātayāḥ sarvāḥ śabdākṛitinibandhanāḥ / Tathaiva loka vidyānāṁ eṣā vidyā parāyaṇam. Just as all thing-classes depend upon word-classes similarly, in this world, this (grammar) is the basis of all disciplines.”**

108 **Ākāṅkṣā nāma pratipattur-jijnāsā. Śaivaparibhāṣā, p. 20.**

109 **Ananvaya-niścaya-abhāvo yogyatā. Ibid. The same definition is put in other words: Yogyatā tv-ananvaya-niścaya-virahaḥ. SB, p. 20.**

110 **Asattil padayor-avyavadhanenopasthitiḥ. Ibid.**

111 **For more details on this from the Śaiva Siddhānta perspective, see K. Sivaraman’s article "The Word as a Category of Revelation", op. cit., p. 52.**

112 **This point is associated with the 'ripening' of malam and will be considered in the next chapter.**

113 **Cf. also, M. Hiriyanna, Values, p. 48.**

114 **The theories of error may be divided broadly into 'realistic' and 'idealistic' ones. The realistic theories are the following:**

   a) **Akhyāti-vāda**, the theory that error is a lack of knowledge, i.e., that error is partial or incomplete knowledge. In other words, there is really no error as such and one should speak, rather, of a failure to distinguish the positive features of an object from the negative ones. The criterion that decides the issue, finally, is the applicability of the knowledge to practical life (vyavahāra). This theory is mainly associated with the Prabhākara school of Mīmāṃsā and, with
significant variations, also with the Sāṅkhya school and Viśiṣṭādvaita, propounded chiefly by Rāmānuja (his version of the theory is also called yathārtha-khyāti or sat-khyāti).

b) Anyathā-khyāti-vāda, the theory that error is the cognition of the object as "otherwise", i.e., as other than what it is in fact. The theory is also called viparīta-khyāti or cognition that is "reversed", i.e., reverse apprehension. This theory is advocated by the Bhāṭṭa school of Mīmāṃsā, the Nyāya-Vaiśeṣika school, the Yoga school, and the Śaiva Siddhānta school. It is this theory that will be discussed from the Śaiva Siddhānta point of view.

The idealistic theories may be divided into three groups:

a) Ātma-khyāti-vāda, the theory that all experience in its objectivized mode is as such illusory and, by extension, the 'error' that occurs in everyday life is a 'double-error'. This theory is advocated chiefly by the Yogācāra or Vijnānavāda school of Buddhism.

b) Asat-khyāti-vāda, the theory that error is the cognition of the non-existent. This theory is advocated with significant differences in its interpretation by the Mādhyamika school of Buddhism and the Madhva school of Vedānta.

c) Anirvacanīya-khyāti-vāda, the theory which points to an object which cannot be said to be this or that thing, i.e., the object is indeterminable.

It is beyond the scope of this study to deal with these theories in their manifold ramifications. As already stated, only the Śaiva Siddhānta view of anyathā-khyāti will be considered. For the Śaiva Siddhānta defence of this theory based on a critical rejection of the rival views on error, see K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, pp. 323-335.

115 Sarvatra cic-chakter-eva prāmāṇya-samarthanāt. Śaivaparibhāṣā, p. 23.

116 This theory, which Śaiva Siddhānta shares with Vedānta, is also called prāpyahāri.

117 See p. 173 above.

118 Cf., K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, p. 342: "Till such time as a judgment is contradicted by another judgment it is
necessarily known as a valid judgment."

119 See also the definitions given on p. 154 above.

120 Cf. also the following: "Memory indeed admits of classification into valid memory (yathārtha smṛti) and erroneous memory (ayathārtha smṛti) on parity with valid and erroneous knowledge, and its exclusion from 'valid knowledge', as such seems on purely technical grounds." K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, p. 320.
CHAPTER 4

MAN AND THE DISCIPLINE
4.1 Gnosis as the only means for man's freedom

The discussion that has been so far undertaken may be said to rest on one basic thesis: the condition of the possibility of man's unfettered existence. In other words, the impact of the definition of man as a bound being (paśu) in the world, is to find its significance in what constitutes the meaning and definition of liberation (mokṣa, muktij). Seen from this perspective, it may be said that the endeavour to arrive at the nature of man's defining characteristic, as being one essentially of consciousness—described as the ātman—culminates in the realization, the knowledge, or the experience of this fundamental fact, as Śaiva Siddhānta sees it. The definition of man was arrived at through a transcendental reflection on the human condition, viz., of man possessing limited knowledge and of being involved in life in the world, both of which vindicate and perpetuate the apparently unending cycle of experiences (saṁsāra). To live in the world without perceiving things as they are is to live in ignorance, to be a victim of one's own deeds, and to live a life that is thereby couched in suffering.

A knowledge of this predicament of man is provided chiefly through a reflection on the categories of experience diversified, for example, in man's role as a cognitive being within the framework of the different states of consciousness (ātma-avasthās), together with man's use of
language as the preeminent instrument or vehicle for the expression of consciousness. In attempting to follow Śivāgrayogin's systematic exposition of Śaiva Siddhānta through his commentary on the Śivajñānabodham, and particularly in attempting here to extract from it some aspects which lead to an understanding of man in Śaiva Siddhānta, the metaphorical language of man undergoing a journey proved useful. In several places, as will be seen, this metaphor is even explicitly stated. The metaphor of man undergoing a spiritual journey is very commonly used in Indian philosophy. Crossing the ocean of life is also usually mentioned. Metaphors, analogies and parables are fascinating linguistic techniques to make intelligible certain concepts which, in the nature of their cases, cannot be adequately explained by a purely theoretical use of language. It will be noticed that several such techniques are employed in this chapter. Many of the metaphors, etc., belong to a 'pool of images' that many schools draw from to express their philosophical insights. What this means is that at some point—if the metaphor is to be taken as realistically as it seems to be intended—the journey has to come to an end. Having said this, it is to be borne in mind that the journey is paradoxically a return to one's original and natural state, to the point from which one in fact unawares started. The metaphor is, however, a useful tool for this chapter which deals with the end of man's so-called
journey.

The journey analogy, encompassing the end of the journey as well, is obvious in verse eight of the Śivajñānabodham, which may be a good starting point for the contents of this chapter. The verse reads:

Being taught by guru thus: "Having lived with the hunters, the senses, you do not know yourself," the blessed one, not different [from Śivam] attains that state [of Śivahood], having abandoned these [senses].

Śivāgrayogin goes into an exegetical detail on the word "taught" (boditāb) with which to begin his commentary on this verse. In his preamble to the verse he clearly states his position that the end of man's journey is reached only through gnosis (jñāna). This standpoint is implicit in his exegesis on the word "taught" and elaborated in the rest of his commentary on this verse. In analysing the word grammatically, he points out that it is a passive participle, which means two things simultaneously: that the person who is taught is also the one who is understood to be the agent who knows. In other words, such a one is the knower who has grasped the meaning of the teaching. This conclusion is necessary to complete the meaning of the word grammatically and, semantically, it applies specifically to man's ability, having been taught, to know. There are certain conditions under which not only is this teaching given but, also, under which it serves the medium through which its meaning—which is identical with reaching the end
of the journey--has the intended soteriological function. The conditions pertain to the exegesis on "the blessed, or fortunate, one" (dhanyah), to be dealt with presently.

The syntax associated with the word "taught" is complete by construing it along with "attains that state" (prāṇotī tat-padam), which refers to the state of śivahood. This is to say that the one who is taught, attains the realization of being non-different from the nature of śivan. The question that this point raises is crucial to Śaiva Siddhānta ontology. It is persistently emphasized, as has already been indicated, that man essentially shares the nature of ultimate reality--the ātman and śīvan are identical insofar as both are characterized as being of the nature of consciousness. In the light of this basic standpoint, how can it be said, as Śivāgrayogin points out anticipating the query, that man "attains" or reaches that state of identity which, at the outset, is already presupposed as being "eternally attained" (nitya-prāptam)? Śivāgrayogin's answer is that, for man in the world, it is "as if not attained" (aprāpta-kalpam). Therefore, having been taught "it is as if attained, like one obtains [again] the forgotten ornament seen around the neck; thus it is said that one attains this [state]."

In elaborating this point Śivāgrayogin arrives at a perceptive semantic conclusion in interpreting this part of the verse:
Therefore, in saying that the one who knows attains that state, it follows that there is a cause for the reaching of that [state] of knowledge; and on account of the teaching, the subject is the same of both the reaching and the knowing through the idiom of mentioning together 'the one who has effected what has to be done'--[that is] on account of the teaching being the cause for the reaching of that [state], which is distinguished by knowledge through the application, generally, of the maxim concerning 'the distinguished and the distinction.'

The above is a summary statement of what is the means for the realization of man's essential nature. There are several points implicit in it which are noteworthy.

From what has already been said, it is clear that the subject who is taught is the same as the one who 'attains' the state of śivahood which, as stated, is rather a recovery of an apparently 'forgotten' essential nature. This is to say that what is attained is not a 'new' state but, nonetheless, has the 'freshness' of an experience of what is in fact always known but, as it were, always forgotten to have existed, as with the forgotten ornament around the neck. What is particularly noteworthy here from the Śaiva Siddhānta perspective, is that one has to be taught, to be made aware of the presence of what is already there. The maxim of 'the distinguished and the distinction' referred to above, applies to one who is distinguished by a particular distinction. One is distinguished by having acquired the knowledge which has been taught. The distinction pertains to what qualifies one for the teaching, a certain preparation--as will be seen below--which calls
simply, but no less profoundly, for an indication of what is already known. From what Śivāgrayogin says here, three significant points emerge: (a) that only the one who has the special quality of knowledge can attain the state of śivahood; (b) that it is this knowledge which leads to it; and (c) that, in fact, it is this knowledge alone which is responsible for it.

The manner in which the teaching is conducted is an important point for Śivāgrayogin, which he says is expressed in the verse by the word "thus" (iti). The word indicates direct speech and carries with it the impact of the active voice which, grammatically and semantically, seems to balance the deliberate use of the passive form "being taught." The contextual significance of this lies in being told "you do not know yourself." The cause for this state of ignorance is what forms part of this teaching, viz., "having lived with the hunters, the senses." Although the verse uses the verbal noun, gerund, construction to state the cause of the ignorance, it is clear from the context that it has to be construed as what is generally evident in an ablative construction. The cause for man's ignorance, therefore, is said to be the living with the senses, which are analogously regarded as being hunters.

If an illustration is sought which simply conveys the profound insight of man's predicament and the teaching, through it, which leads to a knowledge of man's essential
nature, then this will be found in the hunter analogy which Śivāgrayogin gives in exegeting the words "senses" and "hunters." The analogy may be paraphrased here since it helps in following his application of it toward an understanding of man. It is a story concerning a prince who lived with hunters since his childhood. It is said that for some reason or the other (kutaś-cit-kāraṇat), soon after his birth, a certain prince had to be brought up by a family of hunters who were friends of the king. The charm of the story lies obviously in the fact that the prince was reared as a hunter's child and, quite unaware of his royal birth, grew up as a hunter himself. At a dramatic moment, if the story were enacted, the king appears. He says to the prince: "you do not belong to the group of hunters, but are my son, verily [now] the king." Thus, the prince is no longer under the control of the hunters whom, in fact, he now commands and, having left them, goes to his kingdom.

Śivāgrayogin applies this parable to the human situation in the following way: by living with the senses ever since creation (saṁsāra-ārabhya), man is ignorant of being essentially non-different from the nature of Śivam. Later, "when there is a maturity of karman and malam", Śiva appears in the form of a guru, with grace (anugraha), and says: "you are verily I" (aham-eva tvam). Before discussing the maturity of karman and malam, it may be interesting to see how Śivāgrayogin elaborates this analogy.
Just as hunters use baits to lure animals they wish to capture, so too the senses present to the ātman objects of enjoyment which fetter it. Ignorant of its essential nature, the ātman is made to identify itself with what is alien to it and, in this process, becomes entrapped. Therefore, man needs to be taught and what is significant about receiving the teaching is that the teacher (guru) is the epitome of Śiva and, thus, represents the status of one who is the supremely trustworthy person.¹³

Further, being told that one does not know oneself is by itself insufficient, insofar as the impact of the knowledge that the ātman is non-different from Śivam needs to be established by a teacher through the use of reasons, etc., thereby making direct teaching indispensable: "The meaning is that the knowledge is established, devoid of [any] impossibility of understanding, through a teacher alone."¹¹ At this point, Śivāgrayogin points out that the injunctions of Vedic and Āgamic scripture concerning sacred study (adhyāyana) are implicit in the verse, viz., that a teaching must first be heard (śravana), then it must be reflected upon (manana) and, finally, that there should be a deep contemplation or meditation (nīdīdhyaśāna) on it, which leads to an intuitive experience of its meaning.

One of the crucial points concerning man's qualifications to become a candidate for and recipient of the teaching of ultimate reality, pertains to what has been
called above the "maturity of karman and malam." Implicit in this statement is the overcoming not only of the primordial, overwhelming, and malevolent fetter of āpava-malam but, also, of the fetters of karma-malam and māyā-malam which, as already seen in the first chapter, serve a 'beneficent' role. Since the latter are needed on account of the first, what is called for in effect is basically a removal of or dissociation from āpava-malam's malevolence. As will be seen in more detail below, this has to be done in stages through the means of knowledge leading, via the inefficacy of karman and māyā, to the state of non-contact with āpava-malam, i.e., to the pure state (śuddha-avasthā).

The position is stated without equivocation:

...by taking into consideration the Nigamas and the Agamas, the manifestation of śivam is only by first rending malam. As already stated this [manifestation] is not possible without gnosis.12

In view of the fact that man is inescapably involved in life in the world and in view of the fact, also, that the human situation is the outcome of an act of grace on the part of the lord of all beings (paśu-pati), it may be said that man's experiences in the world are themselves a discipline, or, rather, will be transformed into it through a knowledge of this fact, as Śaiva Siddhānta sees it. Without a conscious reflection on the nature of things as they are, man suffers the polarities and extremes of involvement in the world. It is a suffering which seems to go on in endless, recurrent cycles. In this context, one
can speak of the dialectics of freedom and determination in the human situation. Through the inexorable operation of the law of karman, man is self-condemned to a life of suffering. On the other hand, this situation itself represents an exercise of man's freedom to do one thing or the other. The key to the expression of man's essential freedom would be an exploitation of the freedom to get to know the nature of ultimate reality. The attempt to do this signifies an involvement in the world which is qualitatively different from an ignorant involvement in the inescapable discipline of life.

The aim of life in the world according to Śaiva Siddhānta is progressively and consciously to lead to an unfettered and unlimited expression of man's essential nature. This is identical with a withdrawal of the ātman's association from the factor of limitation, viz., malam. The discipline involved in this task is a gradual dissociation, in stages, from the influences of karman, of māyā and, finally, of ānava-malam. It has already been seen that it is beyond the ātman's ability to overcome the overwhelming power of ānava-malam which is "born with" (sahaja) the ātman. However, insofar as karman and māyā serve the ātman by providing a modicum of scope for an expression of its powers of consciousness (ātma-cit-śakti), the ātman is potentially able to consciously direct them (on the analogy of the prince commanding the hunters). In other words, man
is capable of taking advantage of the benevolent role of karman and māyā for the very purpose—with their own aid and with a knowledge of their nature, role, and function—of nullifying their influence. The influence of malam itself, i.e., of ānava-malam, is removed, as already stated and as will be seen again below, through Śivam's power of grace (anugraha-śakti). It will be convenient to discuss the stages of the discipline separately, i.e., with reference to the stages involved in the dissociation from fetters.

4.2 The dissociation from karman

The ingenuity of the theory of karman is that its own 'destruction' is built into its inexorable operation. According to the theory, karman thrives on the attachment to experiences in the world. In other words, the involvement in experiences leaves behind traces which, like seeds, bear fruit at the appropriate time, as already seen in the first chapter. It follows that without the attachment to experiences, the operation of karman is theoretically rendered useless. This point is an intricate and delicate issue. It is useful, in the present context, to recall some aspects of the theory already discussed.

The mechanics of karman involve the operation of three kinds of karman, viz., the accumulated (sañcita) karman, the presently operating (prārabdha) karman, and the karman which is yet to come (āgāmi). It is prārabdha-karman
that is responsible for the present conditions of man's existence. Further, the operation of this type of karman, by definition, can only be nullified by experience (bhoga) in the world itself, i.e., only life in the world, for which it is itself responsible, can consume it. The impact of the reflection and knowledge of this fate of man's existence is crucial to the discipline (sādhana) which reconciles man with the so-called self-imposed condition of life in the world. The implications of this point for a liberated being in the world (jīvan-mukta) will be considered presently.

What is to be noted here is the significance of prārabdha-karman for man, viz., that it has to follow its own course to self-annihilation, that with a knowledge of its inescapability man can cope with the human predicament, and that, consequently, prārabdha-karman is not necessarily an obstacle to the realization and expression of man's essentially unfettered nature of consciousness.

It is on the basis of the theory that prārabdha-karman is the cause for man's present situation, in the sense already seen, that the other types of karman are postulated. In the present context, the elimination of saṅcita-karman is important to consider--with the treatment of prārabdha-karman, it is assumed that future (āgāmi) karman is of no significance, i.e., with a detached attitude towards the inescapable involvement in life in the world, karman is not generated, it has no 'soil' in which to
implant its seed-like traces and, hence, future *karma* is effectively treated on the grounds that there can be no question of its efficacy. In view of the fact that *karma* has to be completely annihilated, the question arises as to how the accumulated (*sañcita*) *karma* can be got rid of. It is at this point that one would have to concede an 'exterior' factor, viz., a special initiation or ritual, called *dīkṣā*, in bringing to nought all the accumulated *karma*. It is not necessary to enter into the elaborate details concerning *dīkṣās*. Suffice it to say in short that for Śivāgrayogin *dīkṣā* itself is not sufficient for liberation. Its function in the present context is limited only to the annihilation of *sañcita-karma*. It serves here as a purificatory aid to gnosis, which alone yields liberation.

The *sañcita-karma*, as already seen (Chapter 1, p. 51), is the stock of meritorious and unmeritorious deeds in seminal form, which have to mature before the Ātman can be said to step out of the cycle of *karma*. The inefficacy or annihilation of *sañcita-karma* is spoken of as a balance of the twinfold *karma* (*karma-sāmya*). What exactly this means is a matter of considerable debate. However, as a prerequisite for the dawn of knowledge concerning ultimate reality, the following is a noteworthy assessment of the concept:

*Karma-sāmya* as a preliminary to the slackening of the grip of *māla* should be understood to imply a
condition when accumulated merits and demerits and their fruits come to entail no difference to the affective reactions of man.16

In terms of the schematic framework of the categories of experience (tattvas) the 'journey' of the pāśu, in progressively freeing itself from fetters (pāśas), 'reaches' the level of śuddha-aśuddha-māyā. This means that it is beyond the scope of the influence of the factor of time (kāla) and, more importantly, that of rāga which is responsible for the attachment to experiences that perpetuates karmā.

4.3 Dissociation from māyā and āpava-malam

Together with the balance or equanimity (sāmya) of the twinfold karmā, goes what is referred to as a maturation or ripening (pāka, paripāka) of āpava-malam. In a sense this ripening is a logical, concurrent occurrence of the systematic process which leads to the balance of karmā. It is a disciplined, yogic attitude on the part of man--an attitude characterized by a constant reflection on the nature of things and on what constitutes man's essential nature--that serves as the prerequisite qualification for grasping the knowledge of ultimate reality. The concept of mala-paripāka interestingly implies a dialectical involvement in the world: on the one hand, man has to be involved in the world so as to feel the suffering (duḥkha) of the seemingly unending cycle of the polar experiences
tacit in worldly life and, on the other hand, to be involved in the world, paradoxically without being identified with what, by definition, affords a limited expression of consciousness, viz., the instruments of the senses which make life in the world at all possible. The journey of the ātman is a process of maturation, of growing up, so to speak, which leads to a 'detached' involvement in the world. It is a spiritual journey in which man attempts to overcome and, thereby, to leave behind the obstacles in the journey. It is an attempt which in the Yoga system is a disciplined, psychological attitude striving to overcome man's greatest obstacle, viz., that of "I am-ness" (asmitā).

As in the Yoga system, Śaiva Siddhānta regards the attitude of self-assertion as the most subtle hindrance to liberation. In the nature of the case, man's self-assertion is generally a limited expression. The root cause for limitation as such is ānava-malam which imperceptibly manifests itself as an independent and exclusive "I", not as the "I" which, as will be seen, is essentially dependent on śivam. The form in which the limitation of ānava is evident to man, i.e., through a transcendental reflection, is that of the intellect (buddhi) which operates in close collusion with the I-maker (ahaṅkāra). In a sense, for man in the world, the progress of the journey to liberation may be said to be taken up with man's attempt to grasp the nature, function, and role of the intellect (buddhi) and that the
'purification' of the atman begins with a purification of the buddhi.

In the analysis of man's role as a cognitive being, it was seen that the intellect is responsible for error in the form of doubt, misapprehension, and memory. It is only the intellect which, by definition, is said to function ideally when its inherent quality of clarity (sattva-guṇa) dominates. In this way, devoid of error, it serves as the 'most appropriate' medium for the atman's manifestation in the world. With the balance of karman (karma-sāmya) the intellect's function is 'unhindered' by the polarities of aversion and attachment, which the category of rāga imposes on it. The yogic discipline involves a clear perception of things as they are with a sharp, cautious psychological analysis of not becoming a victim of what, in fact, should facilitate the 'loosening' of fetters, i.e., man has to contend with the possibility of believing to be non-assertive, what may well be a subtle, but no less powerful, self-assertion. The coming to terms with such a predicament may be said to promote or advance the ripening or maturity of malam. In short, what the Siddhāntin calls for, is a mature attitude.

The mature attitude of the pāśu elevates its status in the hierarchy of pāsūs and corresponds to the degree of malam's maturation. The maturity of malam is defined as the special state in which "the dissociation [from fetters] is
anticipated." Sivāgrayogin emphasizes the point that the maturity of malam (with the balance of karman) is a necessary precondition to receiving the teaching in the manner described in the verse quoted above. It is man's own efforts to take the first steps, as it were, which lead to the eligibility for being taught—on a review of the efforts from the enlightened position, however, it is acknowledged that the sakti intrinsic to śivam, is what serves as the force behind man's endeavours. In elevating its status the paśu 'reaches' the realm of śiva-tattvas which, as already seen, belong to suddha-māyā. This is the threshold to liberation and is the realm in which śivam operates directly through the inherent sakti. In this context one can speak of a "descent of sakti" (śakti-pāta or śakti-nipāta). It may be said that the discipline which makes the paśu 'ascend' to the pure realm (suddha-māyā) converges with the descent of sakti. The signs of this status which marks the paśu's eligibility to receive the knowledge of ultimate reality are clearly defined:

Aversion to the cycle of worldly experience, the desire for liberation, the devotion to śivam, etc., are the characteristics of sakti's descent.²⁰

The outcome of such a state is that it brings fortune.²¹ Hence, as the verse says, man is a fortunate or blessed being to be eligible for the teaching which leads to the state of oneness with śivam. In Sivāgrayogin's own words:

The meaning here is "being fortunate and thereafter being taught"; and not "being taught and thereafter
being fortunate, one attains that state."  

At least two points are noteworthy in the ātman's journey to shake off its fetters. Firstly, the teaching that is received is verbal testimony which by itself does not effect liberation (mokṣa). Apart from the fact that the teaching needs to be meditated upon, as seen above, it was also seen in the discussion on the Śaiva Siddhānta theory of language, that verbal testimony only reflects a reality which it itself is not. Moreover, it operates within the realm of māyā and therefore has a limited function. Secondly, as is implicit in the verse, the attainment of the state presupposes an abandoning of the senses which, in effect, means surpassing the limitations of the categories of experience (tattvas). The direct vision of śivam is an intuitive experience (anubhava) which, to use tautological language, can only be experienced. Such an experience, by definition, has to be free of the limitations which characterize life in the world. In other words, it is an experience which occurs not only with a dissociation from māyā but, also, from (ānava) malam (for more details on the latter, see 4.6 below).

With the last quotation cited above, what Śivāgrayogin is making out a case for, is the emphasis on deep contemplation or meditation (nididhyāsana) which effects the direct experience. In his commentary on verse nine of the Śivajñānabodham (see Appendix 2) he makes the
From statements [in scripture] such as "the one who is Śiva is the same as I;" "one should always think about the non-difference;" and "one gets liberated through concentration and gnosis," the means of liberation is [clearly] a deep contemplation in the form of the apperception of non-difference.²³

In elaborating his point here, and in explaining further the teaching which leads to the direct experience of Śivam as a consequence of passing beyond māyā and āṇava-malam, Śivāgrayogin merely mentions²⁴ the moral of the analogy about the "tenth person". The story (which may be briefly stated here) goes that after crossing a violent river a person counts only nine people instead of the ten who were on the boat together. It is only when the person is made to realize that he omitted himself, that the knowledge of his error dawns in him. Śivāgrayogin's point in referring to this didactic parable is to show that one needs to be taught and that one has to experience the truth of the teaching. It may be said to apply to the context of the present discussion insofar as one does not realize the unity of oneself with Śivam and that this ignorance is due to the association of the ātman with karman, māyā, and āṇava-malam.

4.4 The concept of non-difference (ananyatva)

The verse under discussion says that the fortunate or blessed one is non-different. Śivāgrayogin says that the statement means the ātman is non-different from Śivam. This conclusion is arrived at by taking into account the context
of the statement and the hint given by the word guru or teacher used in the verse. The teacher here, according to the tradition, stands for śivam. The identity between the teacher and śivam is representative of the ultimate identity to be realized by the one being taught, the one who has yet to realize it. Śivāgrayogin raises a crucial question here, one which directly bears upon Śaiva Siddhānta ontology, viz., how is the non-difference between śivam and the ātman to be understood?25

In answering this question he begins by saying explicitly in which sense it is not to be understood. That is, the non-difference between śivam and the ātman is not the kind of non-difference between, for example, an object and its reflection through such means as a mirror or water, as in the case of a face and its reflection, or the sun and its reflection; nor is it the non-difference that is determined by the presence or absence of a limiting agent, such as the form of a pot which separates the inner and outer space; nor, again, is the non-difference to be understood as an absolute identity.26 The interpretation of non-difference as, for example, between gold and a gold ornament or a snake and its coil, is not acceptable either since these examples signify basically an absolute identity, which is clearly rejected. The coexistence between space and time, which may be regarded as one unit, on the other hand, signifies an absolute difference insofar as the two
parts of the unit are intrinsically different. The example of unity as between a word and its meaning is a subtle extension of two things that are basically different and is also unacceptable. The case of the unity of being that is the outcome of the realization of superimposing (āropita) a false reality as, for example, the form of a snake on a rope, is rejected on the grounds that the one cannot exist without the other27 and also, it may be added, since what is superimposed does not constitute the essential nature of the substrate of the superimposition.

In arriving at the Śaiva Siddhānta interpretation of the non-difference between Śivam and the ātman, Śivāgrayogin points out that Bādarāyaṇa in his Brahmasūtras (on which Śaṅkara bases his philosophy of absolute monism, Advaita Vedānta) mentions three ways in which non-difference is interpreted. Śivāgrayogin quotes Brahmasūtras 3:2, 27-29 which, in summarizing the interpretations of non-difference, give the following three examples: that of a snake and its coil, that of light and the locus of light, and that of an object and its reflection.28 By applying the 'maxim of what is stated in the middle' (madhyama-nyāya) as being most important and by acknowledging that this is acceptable 'even from a superficial view' (sthūla-dṛṣṭeh)--and, it may be added, since it seems to avoid extreme interpretations--Śivāgrayogin says that the non-difference between Śivam and the ātman is to be interpreted and understood on the analogy
of light and the locus of light.

The understanding of non-difference (ananyatva) is central to Śaiva Siddhānta and marks the special contribution of the school to the views on liberation (mokṣa). The impact of its interpretation on the analogy of light and its locus is that it provides a scope for the unique Siddhānta view of difference (bheda) and non-difference (abheda) together as one, single representation of ultimate reality as such. In this sense, Śivāgrayogin interprets ananyatva (non-difference), as advaita or tādātmya (identity), on the basis of what is said in verses two, ten and eleven of the Śivajñānabodham (see Appendix 2). His interpretation, therefore, stands for the postulation of a unity of being as constituting both difference and non-difference combined, to the point where it is inadmissible to emphasize exclusively one or the other aspect which make up the single unit of being. In Śivāgrayogin's own words:

Therefore, that state [of unity between śivam and the ātman] is verily one of non-difference albeit having 'a little' difference. 30

What Śivāgrayogin is striving towards here is an interpretation of non-difference which can, theoretically at least, tolerate some kind of difference such as that between a quality (guna) and what possesses the quality (gunin) on the example of light and the locus of light.

It is difficult to explain precisely the philosophical justification of the Śaiva Siddhānta
insistence of non-difference which accommodates a slight difference (Iṣad-bheda). The contribution and significance of this position may be said to lie in the emphasis on Śaiva Siddhānta theology over against Śaiva Siddhānta philosophical anthropology. The analysis of the school's philosophical anthropology evinces man's limitedness in respect of both the knowledge and the expression of consciousness, evident in the ātman's succumbing to the influence of malam. The motivating force behind man's limited expression, nonetheless, has to be attributed to a power which itself provided a scope for manifestation through a 'superior' power. This force is the sakti intrinsic to śivam which, in qualitative terms, is referred to as the power of grace (anugraha-sakti) of Śiva or God, the lord of all beings (paśu-pati). The recognition and acknowledgement of man's limitedness, which leads to the postulation of a being essentially unlimited, may be said to be an act of humility occurring indeed, according to the Siddhāntin, through the grace of God. In this act the Siddhāntin upholds the sovereign and supreme status of God, albeit within man's limitations. Without the grace of the divine, man would remain in the forlorn, desperate and abandoned condition, represented in the Śaiva Siddhānta understanding of the kevala-avasthā. The divine, through its divine power, permeates the very essence of man and in this sense man is eternally in relation (sambandha) with the
divine—a relation that represents a unity of being that humbly acknowledges a little difference between the divinity in man, the ātman, and the divinity that is termed God or śivam. Śaiva Siddhānta theology and Śaiva Siddhānta philosophical anthropology thus coalesce to represent a single unity of being—a unity that is paradoxically described as a unity-in-difference (bheda-abheda).

Man's essential non-difference from the nature of śivam is obscured by superimposing the nature of the insentient senses on the ātman. The error derives from the involvement in worldly experiences. Man falls prey to the senses which, like hunters, entrap the sentient principle in man—the principle which, in fact, furnishes the senses with the very power to act according to their nature. Man needs to be taught, as the verse quoted earlier says, that: "having lived with the senses, the hunters, you do not know yourself." There is no question of interpreting this predicament of man as being unnatural (adharma) in itself; rather, it should be acknowledged that the senses act according to their nature as fetters and that to be liberated from the limitations they impose, implies knowing their essential nature (pāśa-dharma). In other words, man has to realize that the senses themselves have to be subjugated, instead of succumbing to their shackling efforts. In this way, the senses would be utilised for what is accepted to be man's highest aim (puruṣārtha), viz.,
liberation (mokṣa).

The expression of man's essential nature is under subjection "on account of being overpowered by insentient things, etc., beginning with the senses, whose actions--through proximity--are limiting adjuncts superimposed [on the ātman], even as the clarity of a crystal [is superimposed upon] by the redness of a rose." What is important to note here, is the use of the term "limiting adjunct" (upādhi). The word is derived in Sanskrit from the prefix upā with the verbal root dhā meaning 'to place upon', 'to seize', and 'to lay hold of'. As a noun the word means several things which apply in the present context: that which is put in the place of another thing; a substitute or substitution; anything which may be taken for or has the mere name or appearance of another thing. The significance of Śivāgrayogin's use of the term lies in the view that 'by living with the senses', man is controlled by them to the point where they superimpose their insentient nature on the essential clarity of consciousness (cit). The analogy of the crystal taking on the colour of the rose near it effectively conveys the idea of man's tarnished vision of things as they are.

What Śivāgrayogin is making out a case for here, is not a denial of the senses--which are indispensable to man in the world--but, rather, for the view that the essential nature of the senses not be identified with man's essential
nature. Not to 'live with the senses' thus implies 'not to be identified with them'. It may be said that the closeness of the senses to the ātman is only symbolic of the ātman's essential closeness to Śivam. This is to say that the ātman should realize its relation to Śivam—a relation which intrinsically, as already seen, is one of difference-in-non-difference. The word upādhi signifies the view that whilst the senses do indeed afford a defining characteristic of man, they are, nonetheless, not essential to the definition of man's intrinsic nature. In other words, man's essence can, and should, be defined without reference to the senses. Such a definition leads to the view of the ātman as pure consciousness which is identical with Śivam, whilst at the same time accommodating a little difference, as already pointed out.

4.5 The discipline seen as 'ten actions' (daśa-kāryāṇi)

The discipline which leads to the knowledge of ultimate reality may also be described in terms of what is called the ten actions or 'things to be done' (daśa-kāryāṇi). The theory may be said to be a summary of Śaiva Siddhānta insofar as it deals with the knowledge—in various stages or levels—of all the categories which make up the structure of the Śaiva Siddhānta system of thought. It was seen that liberation is effected ultimately only through gnosis (jñāna). What this means for a study that deals with
the philosophical anthropology of the system is that in order to have a knowledge of ultimate reality, man must have a knowledge of all the categories which constitute it, as postulated by the system. The possession of such a knowledge is identical with living a life of unfettered existence. In this sense, as will be seen, the ātman is the orienting principle for an understanding of the ten actions of knowledge.

It has already been pointed out that ultimate reality, according to Śaiva Siddhānta, is constituted of the three ontological categories of malam, ātman, and śivam. What is presupposed in this basic position is that without knowing one, the other categories cannot be known; or, that knowing any one of them entails a knowledge of the other two. Although schematically one may divide knowledge into stages or degrees of clarity, or of 'levels' of knowledge, in itself the knowledge or experience needs to be seen as a unitary one, as will be shown below.

For man in the world, knowledge is the order of the discovery concerning the nature and role of the categories of experience, i.e., the tattvas which are derived ultimately, as already seen, from malam. In the scheme of the 'ten actions' of knowledge, the number "ten" is derived thus: each of the three categories of ultimate reality is 'known' in three different ways, thereby making up nine kinds of knowledge, together with a tenth called the
culminating experience of ultimate reality (śiva-bhoga). It was seen in the discussion of man as a cognitive being that knowledge involves the perception of things as they are (yathārtha), meaning by that that such knowledge is devoid of misapprehension (viparyaya) and doubt (sambāya). The order and stages of the discovery concerning the nature of ultimate reality is said to correspond to this epistemological distinction (the other form of 'error', viz., memory, is not relevant to the scheme being discussed here). This is to say that in the knowledge of the tattvas, for example, there is what may be described as a progression from a misapprehension of their essential nature, to a doubt about them, and, finally, to a clear perception of them as they are. The corresponding terminology for this 'journey' towards the knowledge of tattvas is tattva-rūpam, tattva-darśanam, and tattva-suddhi. The same terminology is used for the knowledge of the ātman as well, viz., ātma-rūpam, ātma-darśanam, and ātma-suddhi. In the case of the knowledge of śivam, however, the following terminology is used: śiva-rūpam, śiva-darśanam, and śiva yoga. The final experience which constitutes ultimate knowledge, as already mentioned, is śiva-bhoga. Before attempting to describe these ten stages of knowledge in more detail, the following points are to be noted.

The categories of śivam, ātman, and malam correspond to a classification of ultimate reality in terms of what is
sat (pure being itself), sadasat (both being and non-being), and asat (non-being). These are characterized respectively by cit (pure consciousness), cidacit (both consciousness and non-consciousness), and acit (non-consciousness). In terms of what has already been said about the terminological framework of Śaiva Siddhānta, the descriptions of Śivam as sat and cit, and of malam as asat and acit, do not require further discussion. The description, however, of the ātman as sadasat and cidacit is of special significance not only for the Śaiva Siddhānta understanding of man but, also, for the ten actions of knowledge, insofar as they apply specifically to man who needs the knowledge of ultimate reality. This unique description of man's nature may be said to be extracted from what is stated in verse seven of the Śivajñanabodham: "That which knows Śivam and the world is the ātman, which is different from these two." That the ātman is different from both Śivam and malam (the use of the word "world" here is synonymous with malam) means that it is not exclusively one or the other—in the sense to be shown presently—and that it has the special status of knowing both. Its central position in the ontological framework signifies that it is capable of 'directing' its power of consciousness to both. Further, its unique status represents what has been referred to several times, viz., that the essential nature of the ātman is its eternal relation (nitya-sambandha) to Śivam which becomes veiled
through the factor of *malam*. On account of this, the Ṙatman has an 'unnatural' relation to the things of the world. In either case, one of the essential defining features of the Ṙatman is that it does not exist in isolation, but is always in some kind of relation. What the journey through the ten actions of knowledge leads to is the Ṙatman's awareness of this feature of its relation and, more significantly, to the awareness which is described rather as the 'recovery' of the knowledge of its unity or relation with Śivam.

It is the Ṙatman's nature to be in relation to some factor that furnishes a clue to the understanding of the Siddhāntin's definition of it as *cidacit* and *sadasat*. Śaiva Siddhānta is unequivocal in defining the essence of man, the Ṙatman, as consciousness (*cit*), as already seen. However, in the light of the Ṙatman's predicament such that it becomes bound and fettered by *malam*, its definition merely as consciousness needs to be qualified. The Ṙatman, by definition, is not and cannot be Śivam nor *malam*, yet it occupies a curious status in between both these two categories of ultimate reality. Viewed from the perspective of its liberated state, it is *cit* (*Ṛatman*) in relation with an eternally unfettered *cit* (*Śivam*). Viewed from the perspective of its bound state, it is a *pasu* (intrinsically still retaining its *cit* nature) in relation with *malam* (which is intrinsically insentient, i.e., *acit*). Therefore, an adequate description of its *cit* nature has to accommodate
both these aspects. In other words, and in taking these points into account, Śaiva Siddhānta attempts to provide an adequate definition of man's essence, viz., the ātman, in a way which accounts for the ātman's nature such that it could be a paśu—a fettered being in the world—and such that it could recover its essential unity with sivam through what constitutes a liberation from pāśa—for which, in fact, the ten actions of knowledge are intended.

The terms cidacit and sadasat, which qualify the unique nature of man's essence, are the special contribution of Śaiva Siddhānta to Indian thought. In the epistemological context, a knowledge of acit and asat must be said to take place through an agent that 'possesses' these very natures—without such a "'becoming' of the nature of what it experiences" knowledge cannot be said to take place. It is because the ātman 'becomes' a paśu on account of pāśa that it is in relation to pāśa, which is described as being acit and asat. That the ātman is in a fettered state does not preclude its expression and manifestation through its inherent power of consciousness, limited though the power may be. In this way cit 'becomes' cidacit in order to know what is acit (and, also, finally to know cit, i.e., sivam). The knowledge of what is acit contrasts it with what is of the nature of cit. In other words, the cit of cidacit is isolated from what is of the nature of acit. At this stage, through the power (śakti) inherent to
consciousness (cit), it is possible, on the one hand, to have a knowledge of acit and, on the other, to experience the relation between ātma-cit and Śiva-cit which, as seen, is one of unity in difference.\textsuperscript{37}

The above points are summarized in the terminology of the ten 'things to be done' or actions of knowledge in the following way. \textit{Tattva-rūpa} is a general comprehension of the categories of experience, without any self-critical understanding. Such a knowledge "is useful practically and is the function of reason or intellect which enumerates and categorises in the interest of comprehension and control."\textsuperscript{38} \textit{Tattva-darśana} is a "metaphysical reason" which is knowledge that is an awareness of knowledge being in "subordination to something higher or deeper which is the condition for the very possibility of its functioning as knowledge." Such a knowledge is indeed an insight which is "self-critical and contemplative yet it does [not] amount to integral knowledge." It is "prone to 'misplaced concreteness', as the knowing self detaches itself and views things abstractly." This kind of knowledge may be said to be a knowledge of the categories that still retains a vestige of the influence of the \textit{tattvas}. In other words, such a knowledge is not yet 'purified'. This happens in the stage of \textit{tattva-śuddhi} where knowledge is "undistorted by hindrances of impurity." In terms of the scheme of the categories of experience such a knowledge goes beyond the
tattvas and cannot be termed knowledge as used in the empirical sense. It implies an intuitive vision which is cleansed of all impurity (mālam) and is in this sense beyond or "above knowledge."

In tattva-rūpam and tattva-darśanam, the first two acts of knowledge, the knowledge in the form of ātma-rūpam is implicit. With tattva-śuddhi there is ātma-darśanam, with śiva-rūpam implicit in these kinds of knowledge. When ātma-śuddhi takes place, śiva-darśana goes with it. These phases of knowledge constitute the means (sādhana) for liberation (mokṣa) that is identical with śiva-yoga and śiva-bhoga. The above description may be schematically represented as follows:

1 tattva-rūpam
2 tattva-darśanam } 4 ātma-rūpam
3 tattva-śuddhi 5 ātma-darśanam 7 śiva-rūpam
6 ātma-śuddhi 8 śiva-darśanam
9 śiva-yoga
10 śiva-bhoga } mokṣa

It has already been pointed out that the only means of knowledge, in both the transcendental and empirical realms, is cit-śakti. It 'belongs' intrinsically to śivam and is common to ātman as well. The linking thread in all the ten actions of knowledge called daśa-kāryāni, is cit-śakti. It is the means through which the union with śivam
is effected. This stage corresponds to the ātman reaching the state of purity (śuddha-avasthā) and in terms of the ātman's states of consciousness, ūiva-yoga is the fourth (turīya) state of this pure realm. The culminating experience called ūiva-bhoga, is the final state beyond the fourth (turīyātīta). It is the element of bliss (ānanda) that distinguishes these latter two states: "A distinction is thus evident between manifestation of Grace and the ensuing manifestation of Bliss."39 Further:

The constitutive element of Bliss is the advaita-experience. The inner significance of advaita consists in its being not merely a relation or union but a resulting experience of the relation. We may accordingly distinguish between the stage of 'advaitic' relation with śakti, and an ensuing advaita experience of ūivatva. 40

The unity between ūivism and the ātman is also analogously compared to the unity in man between the organs of the body, which serve to express sentience, and the principle of sentience. This is unambiguously stated in verse eleven of the ūivajñānabodham: "Śiva is the guide of this [ātman], like the ātman is the guide of sight."41 In other words, life is permeated through and through by the underlying power of supreme divinity. This fact is obscured to ordinary man who requires to be taught it. The teaching calls for a discipline which prepares man for the culminating experience which is the knowledge of man's ūivatvāness (ūivatva), represented by the doctrine of the ten actions of knowledge.
One more point, finally, is relevant to the discussion in this section, viz., the noteworthy distinction between śivam and śakti. How the two are distinguished in Śaiva Siddhānta is crucial for the understanding of man's culminating experience of śiva-bhoga through the means of śakti, which operates in the ten occurrences of knowledge. Bearing in mind the Śaiva Siddhānta distinction between a quality (guna, dharma) and the possessor of the quality (gunin, dharmin), the following is how śakti and śivam are distinguished. The difference between them:

...is the (1) polarity of causal agency (kartṛtva) and the causal means (karṇatva), (2) of being the supporting ground (āśrayatva) and the supported or grounded (āśritatva), (3) of being the unproved or the unknowable (sarva-viṣayanīrūpyatva) and the provable or the knowable (sarva-viṣaya-nīrūpyatva). The last point is significant: the argument from the world (nirūpaka) to the world cause (nirūpya) is of the dharmāt dharmi anumāna type [i.e., an inference of the possessor of a quality from the quality]. God combines within Him the inaccessible depth (Śivam) as well as the element of cognitive accessibility (Śakti) or the aspect of self-giving but for which it would not be possible to approach God through reason or revelation. The latter is the gift of śakti.42

The essence of man is the ātman which is essentially defined as cit-śakti. In other words, man is basically defined in terms of śakti, which ultimately 'belongs' to śivam. The culminating experience, śiva-bhoga, may thus be described as śivam 'drawing' within itself the śakti which served as the manifesting means of the divinity permeating existence as such. To see the ātman as synonymous with śakti is to realize the unity or identity
between śivam and śakti. The words 'unity' and 'identity' are used cautiously so as to maintain the Śaiva Siddhānta insistence on the little difference between śivam and the ātman. This is necessary in order not to slide into the position of the Śivādvaitins, where the identity between the two is regarded as an absolute one. Such an absolute unity between śivam and the ātman is categorically opposed to Śaiva Siddhānta ontology.

4.6 On the non-contact with malam

The key factor in the realization of the ātman's unity with śivam is the removal of the obscuring veil of malam which has the effect of 'disuniting' the two. There are several implications concerning the status of malam, particularly with regard to the liberated being (jīvan-mukta), and it is necessary to discuss a few relevant aspects of Śivāgrayogin's "thoughts on the non-contact with malam" (mala-asaṁsparśa-vicāraḥ). What prompts these thoughts is the use of the word "untouched", or the being without contact, used in verse ten of the Śivajñānabodham:

Untouched by malam, māyā, etc., the perfected one--become one with śivam--is one who has self-knowledge, and has [his] own activity dependent on that [śivam].

In commenting on this verse, he says it is clear that "on account of the removal of malam through an intuitive perception (sākṣātkaṇa) [of śivam] there is non-contact [with malam]." By the dissociation or non-contact
with malam is not to be understood that there is a "destruction of malam's power" (mala-śakti-vināśa). To regard malam as being destroyed is to contradict the ontological status it is given in Śaiva Siddhānta, i.e., as one of the three constituents of ultimate reality. Further, in order to accommodate the possibility of liberation from malam, granting its ontological status, liberation is not to be seen as becoming actual on account of "the non-pervasive existence of malam's power" (mala-śakter-avyāpya-vṛittitva). If this were the case then there need not be any discussion of the ātman's bound condition. That is, if malam were non-pervasive—and if this non-pervasiveness were to account for the possibility of liberation—then it would also be non-pervasive in the so-called bound state. In this case, the ātman would have to be regarded as being, in fact, liberated. This view is rejected because life in the world is a bound state of existence, as already seen in the foregoing chapters, and man's goal is to be liberated from fettered, worldly existence. To see malam as non-pervasive is to lead to the contradiction of the bound state being the liberated state.

To regard malam as being all-pervasive and possessing manifold śaktis or powers, on the other hand, has other implications. In the first place, this would point to the impossibility of liberation, on the theory of the all-pervasiveness of malam. If it is suggested that one of its
powers vanishes to make liberation possible, then it would have to be acknowledged that the other powers are still operative (besides, it could be argued that at some point malam would vanish with the vanishing of its powers). On this theory, granting malam's ability to obscure the ātman's nature, not a single ātman can ever be liberated because malam, at the outset, is said to be all-pervasive.

The crucial question now is: if liberation means that there is no efficacy of malam's power of obscuration over a particular ātman, how is such liberation possible and how is it to be explained? It is to be remembered that all the three categories of ultimate reality, including malam, are all-pervasive, eternal and indestructible. The basic problem under discussion amounts to the need to explain how two all-pervasive categories, the ātman and malam, are no longer in any relation or union—the explanation would also in fact account for the ontological status of all the three categories of ultimate reality, as will be shown. There is no doubt, according to Śaiva Siddhānta, that liberation involves a separation, dissolution or disjunction between the two. In this sense only can one speak of a 'destruction' of malam. In Śivāgrayogin's own words: "Therefore, the separation is the destruction of the contact" (tasmāt-saṁyoga-nāśo viśleṣaḥ). The words used here are carefully selected and are consistent with the ontological status of both malam and the ātman.
Sivāgrayogin's explanation entails a destruction of the union between the two and not the destruction of malaṃ itself—if malaṃ were destroyed the question arises as to how it came to exist in the first place and, further, if it were destroyed now, in liberation, then there can be no logical guarantee that it could not exist again. By saying that the union is destroyed, the Siddhāntin obviates the problem of accounting for the origin of malaṃ which, in any case, is said to be eternal and all-pervasive.

However, the objection above may be levelled against the view of the very disjunction itself of malaṃ from the ātman, i.e., what 'guarantee' is there that the two would not be conjoined again? If this were to be acknowledged, the entire justification of the possibility of liberation is in jeopardy, insofar as man's bound condition would return. In other words, liberation would be encompassed within the framework of sahūra, the recurrent cycle of existence couched in pain—liberation then would be a temporary state of bliss equivalent to a period of joy in the world.

Sivāgrayogin's answer to these problems is:

It cannot be said that there is the contingency of an obscuration through a recurrence of the union, because of the absence of [any] other karman, etc., which are the cause for the union.49

Underlying this answer is the entire analysis of Śaiva Siddhānta philosophical anthropology and the discipline which leads to the equanimity of the twofold karman, leading to the maturity of malaṃ, and culminating in the divine...
grace (anugraha) which, once and for all, blissfully unites the ātman with ṣivam. Malam exists eternally and its disunion from the ātman marks the unveiling of the eternal union between ṣivam and the ātman, which was obscured by the power of malam. This is to say that the positive role of malam indicates a life of fettered existence, its negative role implies a life of freedom or liberation.

The state of liberation, which occurs when there is the absence of any contact between malam and the ātman, can be explained in the metaphorical terms of light and darkness. Darkness may be said to be 'conspicuous' by its very absence in the presence of light. It cannot be said to be destroyed once and for all because it reappears when the light is withdrawn. In applying this analogy to liberation, ṣivam would be the light that keeps darkness at bay, so to speak. The light of ṣivam is all-pervasive, all-powerful, eternal and untouched by any other factor. In the state of liberation the ātman shines in unison with ṣivam and, together, both remain untouched by malam—ṣivam eternally so and the ātman through the grace of ṣivam. Malam cannot be said to lurk around the periphery of the range or potency of the light and thereby, in fact, 'encompass' the light—in this case, the light-darkness analogy is inadequate. ṣivam's light is beyond human comprehension and one can only repeat the superlative descriptions of the power of ṣivam contained in scripture. ṣivam is the light beyond all
lights, the power beyond all powers, the light of all
lights, the power of all powers. Light and power are potent
only through śivam's light and power. And it is because
śivam is the ātman's guide that there is the advice:
"therefore, supreme devotion should be had to this one who
is the ātman's aid."50

4.7 The liberated being (jīvan-mukta)

The description of one who, through the success of
the discipline with the aid of grace, is liberated in the
world, is given in verse ten of the Śivajñānabodham quoted
at the beginning of the previous section.51 The question
that arises over such a being concerns the evident
association with the world, the body and the apparent
involvement in experiences like other beings. One who has
the knowledge of ultimate reality, i.e., the wise, perfected
one, is not expected to be involved in "the mirage of
worldly existence."52 Such an existence seems to contradict
the basis of the discussion on liberation, with the tacit
implication of being rid of the very instruments which
signify a fettered life.

Śivāgrayogin's explanation accounting for the life
in the world of a liberated being is implicit in the words,
quoted above, about there being no "other kārman." What
this means is that apart from prārabdha-kārman, there is no
other kārman, i.e., such a being has neither malam nor
sanctita and agami-karman. This is to say that prarabdha-karman alone is responsible for the wise one's continued existence in the world, while in fact being liberated. The understanding of the liberated being's state rests on grasping the full impact of the karman theory. In all the schools that accept the theory, particularly insofar as it pertains to the discussions on liberation (mokṣa), there is the acknowledgement of one basic thesis, which Śivāgrayogin quotes, viz., that "prarabdha is destroyed by experience, the rest [sanctita and agami] is burnt by knowledge." This thesis is based on the law of karman which requires the fruit of past actions, i.e., those which are already in the process of maturation, to find their end only by reaping their effects in the world. This accounts for the wise one's continued existence in the world. Despite the law, the fruit of the discipline, viz., the acquisition of the knowledge of ultimate reality, is not denied.

In other words, gnosis serves two functions in the context under discussion. It effects the achievement of man's final goal, viz., liberation (mokṣa), which constitutes the highest value to be sought by man (purusārtha). Gnosis also makes possible the reaping of karman without perpetuating it, as would otherwise be the case, i.e., in the state of ignorance, prior to the dawn of knowledge. There is a qualitative difference in the attitude with which man is involved in the two states, which
appear to be the same at first sight. Firstly, as verse ten of the Śivajñānabodham says, the activity of the perfected one is "dependent on that [Śivam]." In other words, it is not dependent on the attachment and aversion characteristic of worldly life, which vindicates and perpetuates life in the world. Here, in the world, the process of reaping karman involves the accumulation of further karman in the process. However, with Śivam known to be the guide of the Ātman, as the Ātman is the guide of the senses (as already seen), the status of such a being is in fact not of this world.

Such a being undergoes the experiences of joy and suffering in the world as a formality, so to speak, as required by the law of karman. Life no longer oscillates between the extremities of experience but is a constant, steady flow of the experience of Śivam's bliss (Śiva-ānanda), ever fresh and ever new. It is a life of eternal wakefulness to the reality of Śivam. The world is seen in the light of the light of all lights. Man's entire journey which, willy nilly, is already in progress, is perceived as being possible only through an act of divine grace for man's own benefit. The end of the journey is the recovery of man's essential unity with Śivam. In this sense, experience in the world (prapañca-bhoga) is transformed into the bliss of the experience of Śivam (Śiva-bhoga).

The enlightened being is beyond all limitations,
beyond the influences of worldly existence, and beyond the discipline which vouchsafed the prize. The continued life in the world is the outcome only of \textit{prārabdha-karman}. It was already seen that \textit{karman} is described as a \textit{malam}, albeit a beneficent one. The \textit{prārabdha-karman} of the liberated being has to be understood in a special way, i.e., as a kind of \textit{karman} that entails only the removal of the traces or vestiges (\textit{vāsanā}) of \textit{malam} and not, as with ordinary beings, as effecting or causing any further accumulation of \textit{karman}. Therefore, \textit{prārabdha-vāsanā}, literally the impressions left behind by \textit{prārabdha-karman}, is to be understood as \textit{mala-vāsanā}, the lingering traces of impurity although the root cause, viz., \textit{malam}, has been removed.

Two analogies are generally given to explain the phenomenon of \textit{vāsanā} as it applies to the liberated being. One is in terms of a spice container--and the spice called asafoetida is generally mentioned because of its intense smell--which retains vestiges of the spice's aroma, even when the container is empty. In the same way, \textit{prārabdha-karman} is, for all practical purposes, defunct in that it cannot take root and thereby germinate at any appropriate time--it is in fact as useless as the aroma of an empty spice container. It is only its traces, the lingering vestiges, that are a harmless cause of worldly desire "through sheer force of habit."\textsuperscript{55} The other analogy that is used to explain the liberated being's continued life in the
world is that of the potter's wheel. When the potter is finished with his creation, the wheel continues to rotate for a time, by the sheer force of the momentum that was originally built up by the potter himself. When its own force is spent or dissipated, the wheel comes to rest of its own accord, well after its rotating power is withdrawn. In the same way, the liberated being continues to live in the world until the lingering force of the involvement in the world is spent. The driving force of life in the world, viz., the attachment (ṛaga) to transitory experiences, is withdrawn but life continues—as if normally—until the dying force comes to a standstill. In both analogies there is a tacit recognition of the power of knowledge (jñāna) which makes possible the life in the world which is not of the nature of the world.

Verse nine of the Śivajñānabodham recommends a contemplation of the five sacred syllables\(^{56}\) and this needs to be explained. The liberated being is by definition free from all obligations and free to act in accordance with the 'free will' that goes with any definition of liberation. The recommendation is to be seen in the spirit in which it is made, viz., as a recommendation. The verb "should contemplate" (dhyāyet) is to be taken literally, i.e., as an optative form which is deliberately used over against the imperative form that carries the force of an injunction. The contemplation is recommended for "warding off the
lingerings of Impurity (vāsanā-mala)\textsuperscript{57}

The sacred formula comprises two words which make up five syllables, viz., \textit{śivāya-namah} (obeisance to Śiva). Although grammatically speaking the meaning is the same in whichever order the words are put, esoterically, however, it is auspicious in the sequence given--it is interesting to note that the word \textit{śiva} also means 'auspicious' and in its personified form means 'the auspicious one', viz., Śiva. In this form it is also called the five sacred syllables which lead to liberation (\textit{mukti-pancākṣara}). This formula contains in a nutshell the entire philosophy of Śaiva Siddhānta: \textit{sī} stands for \textit{śivam}, \textit{vā} for \textit{śakti}, \textit{va} for the \textit{ātman}, \textit{na} for the obscuration power (\textit{tirodhāna-śakti}), and \textit{ma} for \textit{malam}. It is significant to note that while the \textit{ātman}, represented by the syllable \textit{va}, here too--as in the ontological framework of the three categories of ultimate reality--occupies a central position (in this case, between two syllables on either side of it), it belongs to the word \textit{śivāya}. In other words, the essential unity of the \textit{ātman} with \textit{śivam}, and not with \textit{malam}, is what is represented in the sacred formula and is what is to be meditated upon. The liberated being perceives this state of unity and its recommended contemplation serves the purpose of showing obeisance for the grace of liberation, i.e., the removal of the \textit{ātman}'s \textit{malam} through the power integral to \textit{śivam}.\textsuperscript{58}

Further:
The recital of pañcākṣara ... carries with it a total disvaluation or depreciation of self, disvaluation in respect of its very being as an independent thing, and a complementary appreciation of Śiva as the supreme Being and value.59

The liberated being in the world (jīvan-mukta) is one who is purified of all taints (malam) and, by virtue of the knowledge of ultimate reality, reaches the state of purity (suddha-avastha). It marks the end of man's journey. Scorched by the travails of the journey through life in the world, the perfected being now experiences the bliss of "the shade of the state of Śivam."60 When the prārabdha-karman is dissipated the jīvan-mukta's body perishes and there is what is called videha-mukti (bodiless liberation). Once the threshold of the pure state is reached, the point of no return has been achieved. The divine grace that was obscured is now experienced in its unfettered glory. It is this grace that eternally makes evident to the ātman its eternal, blissful unity with Śivam.
1 See Appendix 2.

2...jñānam-eva sākṣāt-tat-prāpti-sādhanam ... SB, p. 351. It may be noted here that Śivāgrayogin's emphasis on gnosis is a reinterpretation, and not a rejection, of the Āgama theory of mokṣa through dīkṣā alone. For Śivāgrayogin, dīkṣā is a ritualistic purification which is an aid to jñāna, the only means for mokṣa, according to him. Referring especially to the Sarvajñānottarāgama—a text which he often refers to and one which is held in the highest esteem by the specific tradition to which Śivāgrayogin belongs, viz., Skanda-paramparā—he says (SB, p. 353), about the means for liberation, that "there, gnosis is the cause for obtaining it" (Tatra jñānasya tat-prāpti- hetutve...). He immediately quotes the following from this text: "The one who in fact knows the ātman, being superior, is one who—being in whatever state—is set free without effort" (Ātmānām paramo bhūtvā yo vijānāti tattvataḥ. Sa mucyate tv-ayatnena sārva-avasthām gato'pi sann-iti ...).


3Tataś-ca bodhā ity-apy-artha labdhaḥ. Ibid., pp. 351-352.

4Ibid., p. 352.

5...prāptam-iva bhavati visṛṣita dṛṣṭam kaṁṭhasya-graiveyakam-iveti prāprnoti-ity-ucyate. Ibid.


7SB, pp. 356-357. The hunter analogy also appears in Bṛhadāranyaka Upaniṣad, 2:1-20, which Śaṅkara refers to in his Brahma-Sūtrabhāṣya, 1:1,4.

8...na tvaṁ vyādha-jātiyāḥ kintv-asmad-apatyaṁ mahārāja eva ... SB, 356.

9...paścāt-karma-mala-paripāke saty-anugraha-pūrvakaṁ gururūpeṇa śivenokta-prakāreṇa aham-eva tvam-itī ... , SB, p.
10 Cf., Śaivaparibhāṣā, p. 135, where it is said that, apart from possessing virtues and being without faults (doṣa-hīna): "A guru is also one [who is] not a bound being, but one who has acquired the nature of Śiva through direct intuition, arising from the fruition of listening to, reflecting on, and deeply contemplating the Vedas, Āgamas, etc." (Guruś-ca na paśutva-yogī. Kīm tu nigama-āgama-ādi-śravaṇa-manana-nididhyāsana-paripāka-adhīna-sākṣātkāreṇa sampanna-śiva-bhāvah.)


12 ...nigama-āgama-paryālocanayā mala-vidāraṇa-pūrvikā śiva-abhivyaktir-eva. Sā ca jñānam vinā na sambhavati-ity-uktam. SB, p. 353.

13 Śivāgrayogin defines dīkṣā as what gives one the eligibility for Śaiva practice. Three such initiations are compulsory rituals in Śaiva Siddhānta: samaya-dīkṣā and viśeṣa-dīkṣā, both of which make one eligible for rendering services in the Śaiva temples and the observance of obligatory duties; the third, nirvāṇa-dīkṣā, is what makes one eligible for the study of the Āgamas. See also next note.

14 For details on dīkṣā according to Śivāgrayogin, see especially the relevant sections of his commentary on verse eight of the Śivajñānabodhaḥ, SB, pp. 374-420; and Chapter five of his Śaivaparibhāṣā, pp. 132-136. See also K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, pp. 380-388; V.A. Devasenapathi, Śaiva Siddhānta, pp. 236-245; J. Gonda, Change and continuity in Indian Religion (The Hague: Mouton and Co., 1965), pp. 429-435 (these pages deal with dīkṣā in Śaivism and form part of Chapter X, which is concerned with dīkṣā as a whole, analysing its origins and performance in various religious groups).

15 Cf. also: "The meaning of the term karma-sāmya has been a matter of great controversy in the writings of Śaiva Siddhānta." K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, p. 394.

16 Ibid., p. 395.

17 Whilst Śaiva Siddhānta freely adopts the yogic discipline expounded by Patañjali, the basic ontological difference between the two is to be especially noted. The Yoga system would not concede the Śaiva Siddhānta view of the ātman being non-different from, and even dependent on, Śivam. Further, as already pointed out, there are three categories
of ultimate reality according to the Siddhāntin, as opposed to the two of the Yoga system.

18Saiva Siddhānta speaks of three kinds of paśus: the sakala-paśu, which has been referred to as man, associated with all the three kinds of malam, viz., ānava, māyā, and kāram; the pralayākala-paśu, associated with ānava and māyā; and the vijñānakala-paśu, associated only with ānava-malam. See especially Saivaparibhāsa, pp. 65-67 for further details.

19Malasya paripāko hi viśleṣaunmukhya-avasthā-viśeṣaḥ. Ibid., p. 134.

20Asya ca sakti-pātasya saṁsāra-vidveṣa-mumukṣa-śiva-bhaktya-ādīni cīhṇāni. Ibid.

21In the technical language of Saiva Siddhānta, this means that karma-sāmya and mala-paripāka lead to a removal of tirodhāna-śakti (the obscuration power). This is identical with śakti acting as anugraha-śakti (the power of grace). When this takes place, it is called śakti-nipāta (the 'descent' of śakti, i.e., of grace). See also, K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, pp. 394-396.


24SB, p. 446.

25This question is central to Saiva Siddhānta and what is presented here are some aspects of the discussion on it by Śivāgrayogin, taken from his commentary on verse eight of the Śivajñānabodham. For a general, critical analysis of the advaita doctrine from the Saiva Siddhānta perspective, see K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, pp. 141-152, pp. 412-415, and see also the fifteen kinds of identity given on pp. 616-617.

26SB, p. 354

27...āropito vā-ananyatvam tad-vad-atraikam vinā'nyasya-avasthāna-abhāvat ... Ibid., pp. 354-355.

28Ibid., p. 355. The three sūtras are: "But because of the twofold reference (in the Scriptures) (the relation of the Highest Self with the Jīva-Self) is like (the relation of) a snake to its coils"; "Or else it is like the light and its
source, inasmuch as both are Teja [luminous]"; and "Or rather (the relationship between the Jīva-Self and the Highest Self, is) as has been stated earlier (in Sūtra 25)", translated by V. M. Apte, Brahma-Sūtra Śaṅkara-Bhāṣya, pp. 604-605.

29What follows is basically the Śaiva Siddhānta view of mokṣa, as represented by Śivāgrayogin in SB. For his refutation of the views of other schools of thought, see especially, SB, pp.470-481, and Śaivaparibhāṣā, pp.153-160.

30Tasmād-īṣad-bhede saty-abheda eva tattvam. SB, p. 354.


32M. Monier-Williams, s.v., upādhi.

33The language of superimposition is used with caution, especially since the Śaiva Siddhānta use of it here differs radically from that of the Advaitins. For the Advaitin, brahman is the only reality. On account of ignorance, man superimposes on it qualities alien to its intrinsic nature. The stock example of such a case is the superimposition of a snake's features onto a rope. Ultimately, however, both the snake and the rope are unreal for the Advaitin—the analogy serves the function only of pointing to the substrate of all existence, viz., brahman, which alone is the single, ultimate reality. For the Śaiva Siddhāntin, on the other hand, the world (the word is used as a synonym for mālam), the ātman, and śivam are the three categories which constitute ultimate reality. The language of superimposition is used in the present context only to distinguish the sentient nature of the ātman from insentient things, such as the senses. What it demonstrates is the view that man's perception is coloured by the senses as a crystal's appearance is tinged by the colour of the flower near it—the analogy is no reflection on the ontological status of the categories of ultimate reality postulated by Śaiva Siddhānta.

34The analysis here is based on K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, pp. 372-418. The significance of the "ten actions" for Śaiva Siddhānta is that: "This doctrine sums up in a single formula the philosophy of spiritual life—Means (sādhana) as well as the Fruit (phala)." Ibid., p. 373. Although Śivāgrayogin does not elaborate the scheme quite in the way elaborated here, it may be referred to because it clearly captures the stages of the discipline, taking into account the whole of Śaiva Siddhānta thought.
35See Appendix 2.

36K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, p. 379.

37Ibid., p. 375: "It is knowledge of atman that holds the key for comprehending the sphere of tattvas on the one side and the sphere of spirit on the other."

38Ibid., p. 373. Until otherwise indicated, the subsequent quotations are taken from the same place.

39Ibid., p. 412.

40Ibid.

41See Appendix 2.

42K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, p. 519. Expressed, ibid., in technical language, the difference is: "Śiva signifies the dharmas of (i) kartṛtvā, (ii) āśrayatva, (iii) sarva-viṣayānirūpyatva, (iv) paramesvaratva, (v) mahatva, (vi) vyāpakatva. Śakti, in contrast is: (i) karāṇatva, (ii) āśritatva, (iii) sarvaviṣaya-nirūpyatva, (iv) paramaisvaryatva, (v) mahimārūpatva, (vi) vyāptitva. The two sets are not synonyms of each other, and hence different."

43SB, p. 461.

44See Appendix 2.

45Tatra-malasya tāvat sākṣātkāreṇa-apasāritatvād-asasāṃsparśaḥ. SB, p. 461.

46Ibid.

47Ibid.

48Ibid., p. 462.

49Na ca punas-saṃyogetpattvā-āvaraṇa-prasāṅga iti vācyam. Saṃyoga-kāraṇasya-anyatara-karma-āder-abhāvāt. Ibid. See the next section for the explanation of "other karman."

50Verse eleven of the Śivajñānabodham, see Appendix 2.

51See also ibid.

52Verse nine, ibid.

53Prārabdham bhogato na yec-cheṣaṁ jñānena dahiye. SB, p. 495.
54Cf., "...there is an eternal novelty, a perpetual freshness about the experience." K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, p. 415.

55Ibid., p. 411.

56See Appendix 2.

57K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, p. 403.


59K. Sivaraman, Śaivism, p. 403.

60Verse nine of the Śivajñānabodham, see Appendix 2.
CONCLUSION
Conclusion

On the basis of the foregoing investigation into Śivāgrayogin's Śivāgrahācārya, the Śaiva Siddhānta analysis of man may be said to rest on the distinction between sentience and insentience. The proof that there is an Ātman, the principle of sentience, in the body, therefore, is of crucial significance not only for the essential definition of man but, also, for what is expressed or manifested in man's everyday experiences. Without the principle of sentience, viz., consciousness, so-called man would be reduced to a corpse. For man, life in the world involves a close relationship between the organs of the body and the conscious, sentient principle which makes their functions possible. The unity of being between sentience and insentience is indispensable for a meaningful life in the world. Crucial to such a life is a 'harmonious' relationship between the two which derives from a knowledge of their essential natures.

It has been said, in a somewhat dramatic way, that the senses are like hunters, making a concerted effort to trap sentience. The attraction of their ploys leads to a subjection to their influences. The Śaiva Siddhānta analysis of this predicament implies that the way in which the senses 'act'--the power of action being derived, in fact, from the sentient principle--is in accordance with their essential nature. As hunters, the senses can do
nothing but hunt and, to extend the analogy, their prey can only be sentience, with which they have a close relationship. The sign of their influence is the passion (rāga) for certain kinds of experiences, i.e., an attachment to what is pleasing, with a tacit aversion or repugnance (dveṣa) to what is unpleasing. Without a knowledge of what constitutes the essential nature, role and function of the insentient categories of man's experience—including, most immediately, the senses—man is in the throes of life, oscillating between the extremes of experiences and, thereby, feels life in the world to be one of suffering or pain (duḥkha).

The principle of sentience, or consciousness as such, is a victim of the limiting effects of the senses, in the manner already elaborated according to the Śaiva Siddhānta standpoint. The close relationship between them, making up what constitutes the unity of being referred to as man in the world, is no reflection on the essential nature of the two, i.e., the all-pervasive, eternal essence of consciousness is not at stake or at risk on account of the limiting adjunct of insentience. The senses are not only indispensable for life in the world but are, also, the instruments through which consciousness is given a scope for expression and manifestation. A reflection on the positive role of the senses is the first step toward coming to grips with man's predicament. Such a reflection presupposes an
inquiry into why man is subject to passion (rāga), with its inbuilt structure of attachment and aversion to certain kinds of experiences—a structure which splits the nature of what in fact belongs to one category. This is to say that passion (rāga) is a category that is of the nature of insentience, with a single function. To desire what is 'pleasant' and, thereby, to avoid what is 'unpleasant' is an inadmissible separation—based on ignorance—of a category function which, in fact, should be regarded as being essentially one, insofar as both are effects of a single factor.

No sooner is the nature of life in the world seen to be what involves both kinds of so-called desirable and undesirable experiences than one strikes at the heart of the mechanism which is responsible for the perpetuation and vindication of polar or extreme experiences, viz., of the law of karman. In other words, the craving for certain things and the aversion to others, leads to an unending accumulation of desires. The striving toward what is desirable only, is an attitude to life which ignores an integral part of the nature of what influences worldly life, i.e., of what also causes so-called undesirable experiences. The law of karman inexorably presupposes a reaping of the results of all kinds of actions and deeds. The problem for man, who possesses limited knowledge, is the inability to know precisely which actions are meritorious, which previous
actions are responsible for the present conditions of existence, and what effects are yet to take place. In any case, to exploit such knowledge serves the purpose mainly of indicating what probably is meritorious leading, thereby, to the harvest of so-called pleasant effects. However, this is not the solution to the problem of man's fettered existence. To desire what is pleasing is still to be a victim of the law responsible for continued fettered life. What is called for is a balanced, mature attitude where life's joys are to be taken in the same spirit as life's sufferings. The basis of this theory is that one is responsible for one's own situation. To realize the impact of this point is the first step to achieving a balanced attitude, where the effects of one's deeds are borne with equanimity.

The senses exploit man's weakness and limited knowledge--which they themselves contribute to causing--to the point where man becomes subjugated. The sign of their influence is most striking in their role in cognition, i.e., in man's subjection to error in the perception of things. There is no gainsaying that without the role of the senses life in the world is impossible. There is no doubt either that, as instruments of perception, the senses have a limited capacity, that they themselves cannot perceive things as they are. The senses share the essential nature of the insentient things which they apparently perceive. The indispensability of the senses for life in the world
does not put them in a state of authority—the senses perform as they do only through the power of the consciousness, which makes their function at all possible. To consciously direct them, and not to be directed by them, constitutes the attempt not to fall into the pattern, and thus become a victim, of their hunter-like behaviour. In other words, one attempts not to fall prey to the senses' caprice in indicating what is pleasing, making it appear as a value to be sought. In this way, the mechanism of the karman law is interfered with, insofar as an attempt is made to withdraw the fuel for karman, viz., rāga or passion, which is responsible for the attachment to what is pleasant, with the implicit dveṣa or aversion to what is unpleasant. This is to say that the senses are made to turn direction. Instead of their usual outgoing attitude, they are consciously directed 'inwards' so as to 'reveal' their nature. This attempt involves a discipline which exploits the full—albeit intrinsically limited—capacity of the senses, i.e., consciousness takes command.

From what has been said above, the unity of being for man entails a constant juxtaposition of the sentient and the insentient. To be involved in the world, swayed by the whims of the senses is to fasten the fetters of an already bound existence. The exploitation of what is at the dispensation of consciousness is a step toward 'loosening' the fetters. Life in the world may thus be said to serve a
double function: on the one hand, it perpetuates the cycles of inescapable experiences and, on the other, it provides the necessary atmosphere and framework for the elimination of bondage as such. With the control of the senses, the law of karman is itself gradually under control and, with this, the status of man is elevated. It marks the phase of maturity, of a balanced attitude, that goes along with the constant attempt to see things as they are. Seeing things as they are, reveals the striking contrast between the insentient categories of experience and the principle of sentience, consciousness as such, at whose disposal they are. Ordinary perception is transformed into 'internal' perception. This latter perception, also a direct and immediate one, makes evident (as already seen) the polarities such as joy and suffering, which characterize the nature of worldly experience. It is particularly in this context that the question arises as to why man needs to undergo the apparently unending cycle of polar experiences. To persist in this line of reflection is gradually to delve deeper into the nature and function of each of the categories of experience. It indicates a yogic attitude which is represented in the constant reflection on the nature of things. It may be said, further, that the experiences of inner perception make more urgent the desire to break the link in the chain of fettered existence.

Perception, aided by inference and verbal testimony,
serves as a platform which reveals a dimension of reality not readily open to an attitude limited merely to an involvement in worldly experience. Perception is man's most basic instrument of cognition. The significance of the directness and immediacy which, by definition, characterizes the nature of perception is to be exploited to its full capacity. Strengthened by inference and verbal testimony, it transcends its limitation to the perception only of things in the world—a limitation that is not realized in the habitual indulging of one's desires. The conscious inward direction of the senses demarcates them from the power which makes their functions possible. The power of consciousness, intrinsic and inherent to consciousness as such, was seen to be the directing force behind man's involvement in the world. Without a realization of this fact, as Śaiva Siddhānta sees it, the senses succeed in imposing themselves on consciousness, as they are wont to doing because of their close relationship to consciousness. Under their influence, i.e., without a transcendental reflection on what really constitutes their essential nature, consciousness is lead, and mislead. The appropriate attitude which inference and verbal testimony help bring about, is a 'perception of perception'. That is, a reflection on man's role as a cognitive being makes evident, directly and unmediatedly, the sovereignty of consciousness. Consciousness is not limited the way each sense organ is to
its corresponding object, e.g. ears to sound and nose to smell. Consciousness is limited, in its outward expression and manifestation, only to the ability, scope and range of each organ's function, but by pervading all of them it makes their functions possible. Again, that consciousness is necessarily so limited is no reflection on its essential powerful nature. The point is that with inference and verbal testimony, man is provided with the tools with which not only to perceive things as they are but, also, to perceive the power which constitutes the essential feature of consciousness, i.e., man's defining characteristic.

Underlying the role of man as a cognitive being, is the intrinsic validity of cognition and knowledge. Consciousness itself validates its own supremacy over the instruments of cognition at its disposal. This basic presupposition underlies the significance of the Śaiva Siddhānta theory of man as a cognitive being. To ask how we know that we know, is to beg the question, as already seen. The role of consciousness in cognition is its own criterion. Consciousness illumines both itself and the object, through the channel provided by the senses—just as light reveals both itself and the objects around it. The unique feature of consciousness, denied to the organs of perception, is that it can be aware of itself. This may be said to be a logical conclusion of what inference yields as regards the nature of consciousness: consciousness is always a
consciousness of something and, logically, it is to be acknowledged that consciousness can be its own 'object'. This stage marks a transcendence of the role of consciousness in the empirical world, though it may be the outcome of a reflection on it. In other words, a reflection on man's role as a cognitive being, points to the possibility of a trained perception of the very basis of this crucial role, which man takes for granted in empirical life. In this perception, the empirical subject-object distinction is interpreted in the light of consciousness alone, i.e., consciousness is the very means which 'perceives' itself as itself, through its own inherent power.

At the empirical level, when the organs of perception are inoperative, the veil of ignorance (the word is used as a synonym for malam) enshrouds consciousness. Without the channel forged by the sense organs between the objects of the world and consciousness, the relation or contact between the two is cut. Consciousness is isolated and this isolation indicates a negative status, i.e., consciousness has no scope for the manifestation and expression of its powers; this indicates that it is under subjection. No sooner do the senses respond to the stimulus of their respective objects than it means that the veil of ignorance is lifted, the senses are empowered, and cognition takes place. This is an over-simplification of the
overwhelming influence of ignorance and of the complex
phenomenon of cognition dealt with in Chapter 3. Suffice it
to say for the purposes here that with the beneficent roles
of karman and māyā, consciousness is in a position to
experience the objects of the world and, thereby, at least
partially, overcome its isolation. At the empirical level,
there is generally no control over when and how the veil of
ignorance is lifted in cognition. It is a common experience
of everyday life and is usually taken for granted as a fact
of being in the world. It may be said to just happen, as
does the sudden perception of a striking object. From the
Śaiva Siddhānta perspective, man's role in the world,
particularly as a cognitive being, indicates an attempt to
unveil consciousness. The oscillation between rending the
veil of ignorance and the return of ignorance is the story
of man in the world—with which also goes the joy and pain
of life's experiences. A reflection on this predicament
indicates the possibility of ignorance being completely
eradicated through consciousness itself which, when
unhindered, naturally and constantly unleashes its powers of
volition, knowledge and action.

At the transcendental level, consciousness is
conscious of itself, by contrast with a consciousness of
what belongs to the nature of insentience. The realization
of this nature of consciousness implies an awareness that it
animates the organs of the body. It is the power of
consciousness that instigates a dynamism in the insentient categories of experience—a dynamism which does not belong to them intrinsically. On account of the close relation between the categories of experience and the principle of consciousness, the *prima facie* view is that the categories inherently possess activity. The error is based on an ignorance of the natures of both sentience and insentience. Also, it may be said that because consciousness permeates the insentient categories that are closely united with it, the ontological distinction between the two is not evident without an intuitive perception. Further, the ignorance about their ultimate distinctive features is responsible for a mutual confusion of the categories of sentience and insentience, on the analogy of the crystal taking on the colour of the object near it. By not discriminating one from the other, consciousness becomes bound and fettered by this ignorance to the point where, even at the empirical level, consciousness has a limited scope. This is to say, as already indicated, that a reflection on man's predicament at the empirical level points to the idea of freedom and liberation from bondage as such. Such an idea can be instilled in man through scripture. Man needs to be taught it in order to overcome the suffering that is due basically to ignorance. In other words, language comes to man's rescue. It is the insentient platform which makes possible the leap from the realm of insentience to that of pure
sentience.

The ignorance which acts as the restrictive principle of consciousness is evident, according to Saiva Siddhānta, not only in man as a cognitive being but, also in the so-called states which consciousness has to undergo on account of it. Of these, the state of wakefulness reveals both the condition of bondage and the condition of the possibility of liberation, i.e., through the power of the word as a category of such revelation. However, life in the world is a series of lapses into the state of ignorance, represented in man's succumbing to the other 'effect' states, such as dream and deep sleep--i.e., apart from the wakeful one in which the discourse on man's predicament and its positive role in possibly bringing about liberation, are meaningful to man. The degree of the desire for liberation is commensurate with the intensity with which the soteriological discipline is undertaken. It calls for a conscious effort on the part of man where the energy utilized in the hankering after what is sensually pleasing, is transformed into a desire for a knowledge of the intrinsic nature of experience as such. Such an effort is characterized by an attempt to constantly reflect on the human situation, i.e., it is an attempt to resolutely be aware of the inescapable involvement in the world and to reflect on the merit of scriptural statements which declare man's bound existence, and consequent suffering, to be due
to ignorance concerning man's essential nature. Such an attempt indicates a resilient attitude on the part of consciousness, viz., to return to its natural state which is one of not being in subjection but, rather, of consciously commanding the insentient categories at its disposal.

The journey which man undergoes through the different states represents a process intended to culminate in the eradication of ignorance. The root cause of ignorance is malam (generally, the two terms ignorance and malam may be used synonymously) and man has to rely on the power of grace to be dissociated from its influence—an influence which is represented in the fact of man's possessing limited knowledge and of being involved in experiences in the world. The description of the 'causal' and 'effect' states of consciousness indicates a journey: a journey from an isolated state of consciousness which is overwhelmed by malam, to a state of partial manifestation of the powers of consciousness with the aid of kārman and māyā (in which condition the effect states of wakefulness, dream, etc., are of special significance for a philosophical anthropology), to a 'return' to the essential and intrinsic pristine purity of consciousness (via the state of isolation) through the power of grace. It was seen that the concept of malam was postulated on the basis of the insight into man's predicament, i.e., of man as a being with limited knowledge, involved in the world, and suffering the effects
of the ignorance about the nature of ultimate reality. In short, life in the world is a progressive attempt to be rid of malam's influence.

In the journey to freedom or liberation from fetters which man undergoes—a journey which may be described as a spiritual one—desire plays a dialectical role. On the one hand, desirelessness or dispassion (vairāgya), particularly for worldly experience, is called for and, on the other hand, the desire for liberation is a necessary prerequisite. What this implies is that the desire for what is pleasing in the world (bubhukṣutva) is to be transformed into a desire for liberation (mumukṣutva). How this is to be reconciled with the elimination of desire as such, since this is what seems to be required ultimately, may be said to be a matter of individual reflection on one's own situation. For man in the world, desire is a motivating factor for continued existence. What seems to be called for in the journey to liberation is initially a 'purification' of desire, i.e., on the basis of the realization that the desire for worldly pleasure fastens man's already existing bonds, a 'redirection' of desire is to be attempted. In other words, by reflecting on the nature and significance of desire—without which, it may be said, man cannot live—desire is turned around, so to speak, in order to pursue goals qualitatively different from worldly ones. The logical conclusion this attitudes leads to is, paradoxically, a
desire to be without desire. Desire may be said to be rooted in a sense of 'I' and 'mine' which, as already seen, are the most subtle obstructions to liberation. It indicates a duality of subject and object and, hence, is a tacit ignorance of the unity of being. It is particularly in this context that the stress on the supremacy of gnosis is most striking.

It has already been seen that, for Śivāgrayogin, gnosis is the only means for liberation. The entire weight of the discussion on Śaiva Siddhānta philosophical anthropology rests on this emphasis on gnosis. Śivāgrayogin's method of arriving at the unity of being through gnosis is not novel or atypical to Indian thought. The superiority of gnosis was radicalized in Vedānta philosophy by Śaṅkara, several centuries earlier in his radical monism, based on his commentary of the Brahmasūtra of Bādarāyaṇa. It may be said that within the philosophical assumptions of Śaiva Siddhānta, Śivāgrayogin's emphasis on the non-difference or unity of being (between the ātman and Śivam) realized through the means of gnosis, on the basis of his commentary on the Śivajñānabodham, bears a striking similarity to Śaṅkara's highly estimated efforts. Further, just as Śaṅkara interprets the Vedas in the light of the jñāna-pāda, the section which deals with gnosis, so too Śivāgrayogin sees the significance of ritual, etc., in the Āgamas in the light of his emphasis on gnosis. It was also
noted that Śivāgrayogin bases his views chiefly on the authority of the jñāna-pāda of selected Āgamas. Here too, Śivāgrayogin employs the technique of selection used by Śaṅkara for his own justification of radical monism through gnosis.

The unity of being that Śivāgrayogin's analysis yields is a unity that acknowledges a 'little' difference, on the analogy of a thing and the quality it possesses, and the example of light and its locus was given as a symbolic representation of this unity. The Śaiva Siddhānta understanding of this point has already been discussed and suffice it to say here that the desire which leads to the eradication of desire as such—and thus to a realization of the unity of being—is possible only through gnosis. The activity of the liberated being depends entirely on Śivam and the sense of 'I' and 'mine' bears no significance at all. The Ātman becomes Śivam. Śivam is verily said to be the Ātman's guide as the Ātman is the guide of the body-functions. The state of the liberated being cannot be said to be one of subjection. Rather, such a being realizes the essential nature of ultimate reality. It is man's intrinsic nature to be guided by the light and power of Śivam and the liberated being realizes or experiences, through gnosis, the natural unity between consciousness (Ātman) and the consciousness which underlies consciousness (Śivam). This natural unity is the basic postulate underlying Śaiva
Siddhānta philosophical anthropology. What this point implies is that the Śaiva Siddhānta theory about the nature of man is to be seen in the background of its theory about the nature of ultimate reality. In other words, Śaiva Siddhānta philosophical anthropology has to be read ultimately in the light of Śaiva Siddhānta theology. It has already been indicated that the aim of this study has been to attempt to deal primarily with the former, bearing in mind its position in the latter, as indicated at relevant points in the study.

A question that may be asked now is: what is the special contribution of Śaiva Siddhānta philosophical anthropology to Indian thought? The question may be dealt with in the light of the Śaiva Siddhānta definition of man that emerges from the present study, viz., that man is a bound being expressing and manifesting consciousness in the world in a limited way; a being whose essential nature is to be defined in terms of consciousness; and a being who, through grace, is capable of being liberated from fettered existence. The analysis of the foregoing chapters may be said to elaborate these three aspects of the Śaiva Siddhānta definition of man. What seems to be unique about it is the Siddhāntin's attempt not only to analyze man's essential nature as radically different from the nature of the world—and, indeed, a world in which a scope for liberation is afforded—but, also, to attempt to account for the nature of
man's so-called bound existence in the world itself. This study has approached Śaiva Siddhānta philosophical anthropology from the latter standpoint, i.e., by expounding and analyzing the Śaiva Siddhānta description of man in the world, an attempt has been made to bring out the impact of the Śaiva Siddhānta view of the intrinsic nature of man as a being defined essentially by consciousness.

It may be said, generally, the philosophical anthropology of other schools of Indian thought (e.g., Sāṅkhya, Yoga and Advaita Vedānta) emphasizes man's essential nature at the expense of man's role in the world. This is to say that the world and man's involvement in it according to the other schools imply a tacit denial of what, according to Śaiva Siddhānta, positively form, shape, or mould the conditions of possible liberation from fettered existence. Man's involvement in the world, according to Śaiva Siddhānta, is due to an act of divine grace for man's sake. Life in the world is no doubt a bound existence, but it is one in which man is given a scope, through fetters, to unbounded expression and manifestation of consciousness. In other words, while regarding man's bound state as being extrinsic to man's essential nature, Śaiva Siddhānta proceeds to describe man as a bound being attempting, thereby, to show how this very bound state is not only a necessary consequence of man's limited freedom but, also, how this freedom can ultimately become unlimited and
absolute, through an act of divine grace.

The significance and special contribution of Śaiva Siddhānta philosophical anthropology was discussed specifically with reference to the need to qualify man's essential defining feature as consciousness. It was seen that an adequate definition of man according to Śaiva Siddhānta, has to accommodate both (a) the essential unity between the Ātman--characterized as consciousness that becomes prey to ṭalama--and Śivam--also characterized as consciousness, but a consciousness which is eternally pure and untouched by ṭalama--and (b) the unity of being referred to as man in the world. This is to say that Śaiva Siddhānta attempts to provide a 'complete' definition of man, i.e., it attempts to describe man as a bound and fettered being in the world in a way which accommodates the condition of a possibility of freedom from bondage as such. In other words, what is called a complete definition of man according to Śaiva Siddhānta, takes into account both the 'specific' and the 'general' definitions of man, already discussed.

If gnosis is accepted as the only means for overcoming ignorance and, thereby, being liberated, it may be asked why indeed is there a need to postulate the category of Śivam. The Śaiva Siddhānta answer would be--in the light of what has already been said--that what is called man's "power of consciousness" does not in fact belong to man. If it did, the question would arise as to why in fact
we possess a limited knowledge of things and of reality as such and why, indeed, we suffer from its consequences in the world. It is because of this predicament that a 'superior' power which itself empowers man's power of consciousness, needs to be acknowledged—the two being identical with a little difference, in the sense already elaborated. A detailed discussion on the postulation of the category called śivam entails, among other things, the proof for the existence of this category, which is beyond the scope of the present study. Suffice it to say that for Śaiva Siddhānta, the existence of śivam is what gives credibility to the goals and values of man's life in the world, the highest of which is the aim of liberation from fettered existence, and one which is made possible through śivam's power of grace. The philosophical anthropology of Śaiva Siddhānta thus has to be read in the background of the permeating theology which underlies the system.
APPENDICES
## Appendix 1

Table of Śaiva Siddhānta Categories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>śivam</td>
<td>ātman</td>
<td>malam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pati</td>
<td>paśu</td>
<td>pāśa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āṇava-malam</td>
<td>māyā-malam</td>
<td>karma-malam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>śuddha-māyā (bindu, kundalinī)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36 nāda</td>
<td>35 bindu</td>
<td>34 sādākhyā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 śuddha-arūḍhha-māyā (arūḍhha-māyā, mohini)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 kāla</td>
<td>29 niyati</td>
<td>28 kāla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 mūla-prakṛiti (arūḍhha-māyā, prakṛiti, guṇa, citta)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 buddhi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 ahaṅkāra</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taijāsa</td>
<td>vaikārika</td>
<td>bhūtādi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(sattva)</td>
<td>(rajas)</td>
<td>(tamas)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 manas and</td>
<td>5 karmendriyas</td>
<td>5 tanmātras and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 jñānendriyas</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 śrotra (hearing)</td>
<td>15 vāka (speech)</td>
<td>10 śabda (sound)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 tvak (touch)</td>
<td>14 pāda (feet)</td>
<td>9 sparśa (touchability)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 caksus (sight)</td>
<td>13 pāṇi (hands)</td>
<td>8 rūpa (form)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 rasana (taste)</td>
<td>12 pāyu (anus)</td>
<td>7 rasa (tastability)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 ghrāṇa (smell)</td>
<td>11 upastha (genitals)</td>
<td>6 gandha (smell)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1–24: ātma-tattvas (bhogyā-khaṇḍa)
25–31: vidyā-tattvas (bhujayaṭri-khaṇḍa)
31–36: śiva-tattvas (preraka-khaṇḍa)
Appendix 2

The text of the Śivajñānabodham from Śivāgrayogin’s Śivāgrahśya (with a translation in the light of the commentary).

Asti kartā sa hṛtvaitat-sṛijaty-asmāt-prabhur-
haraḥ //

1. There is an agent of the world on account of seeing [it as] an effect, possessing the female, the male, the neuter, etc. He [the agent] creates it having dissolved it. Therefore, Hara [Śiva] is the lord.

Anyāḥ san-vyāptito’nanyal) karta-karma-anusārataḥ /
Karoti saṁśāritiḥ puṃsām-ājñayāśamavetayā //

2. With an intrinsic, unlimited power the agent creates the world for man in accordance with [man’s] karman; [though] being different the agent is non-different by virtue of pervasion.

Netito munato’rekāt akṣoparati bodhitaḥ / Svāpe
nirbhogato bodhe boddhṛitvād-asya-anus-tanau //

3. There is an ānu in the body on account of: [the cognition of] not-thisness; the excess of mineness; there being consciousness [even] when the senses have ceased [functioning, e.g. in the dream state]; [the recollection of] there being no experience in deep sleep; and on account of there being one [an agent] who perceives when awake.

Ātma-antaḥ-karaṇād-anyo‘py-anvito mantri-bhūpavat /
Avasthā-paṇcaka-stho‘to mala-ruddha-sva-ḍīk-kriyaḥ //

4. The ātman is different from the internal organs also [i.e., apart from citta and pṛāṇa] associated [with them, though] like a king with ministers. Therefore, it [ātman] exists in the five states having its own knowledge and action restricted by malam.

Vidanty-aṅkāṇi puṃsā‘ṛthān-na svayaṃ so‘pi śambhuṇā /
Tad-vikārī-śivaś-cen-na kānto‘yo-vat sa tan nayet //
5. The senses do not perceive objects by themselves [but] with [the help of] a spirit (puṃs) and it [spirit] with [the help of] Śambhu [Śiva]. If [it is said] Śiva is liable to a change [of nature] through this then, it is not so—he [Śiva] leads this [spirit in man] like a magnet in iron.

Adṛṣṭyaṁ ced-asadh-bhāvo dṛṣṭyaṁ cej-jaḍimā-bhavet / Śambhos-tad-vyatirekena jñeyaṁ rūpaṁ vidur-budhāḥ //

6. If [something is] not seen it would be non-existent, if seen it would be insentient. The wise ones say that the nature of Śambhu is to be known differently from [knowing] these [visible and invisible objects].

Na-acic-cit-sannidhau kintu na vittas-te ubhe mithaḥ / Prapañca-śivayor-vettā yas-sa ātmā-tayoḥ prīthak //

7. In the presence of cit there is no acit; further, these mutually do not experience each other. The one that knows both Śivam and the world is the ātman, which is different from these two.

Sthitvā sahendriya-vyādhais-tvāṁ na vetsi-iti bodhitaḥ / Muktvaitān gurūṇā-ananyo dhanyāḥ prāpnoti tat-padam //

8. Being taught by a guru thus: "Having lived with the hunters, the senses, you do not know yourself," the blessed one, not different [from Śivam] attains that state [of Śivahood], having abandoned these [senses].

Cid-dṛṣṭi-ātmanī dṛṣṭvesāṁ tyaktvā-āvṛtiti-marīcikāṁ / Labdhvā śiva-padac-chāyāṁ dhyāyet-pañca-aksārīṁ sudhīḥ //

9. Having seen Īśa [Śiva] within oneself through the eye of consciousness (cit), having left the mirage of worldly existence, and having obtained the shade of Śivam's state, the wise one should contemplate the five [sacred] syllables.

Śivenaikyaṅgatas-siddhas-tad-adhīna-sva-vṛttikāḥ / Mala-māyā-ādy-asamśṛṣṭo bhavati sva-anubhūtimān //

10. Untouched by malam, mayā, etc., the perfected one—become one with Śivam—is one who has self-knowledge, and has [his] own activity dependent on that [Śivam].

Dṛiṣo darśayitā-iva-ātmā-tasya darśayitā-śivaḥ /
11. Śiva is the guide of this [ātman] like the ātman is the guide of sight [and other sense organs]; therefore; supreme devotion should be had to this one [Śiva] who is the ātman's aid.

Muktyai prāpya satas-teṣāṁ bhajed-veṣāṁ śiva-ālayam /
Ittham vidyāc-chivajñānabodhe śaiva-artha-nirṇayam //

12. Having resorted to the virtuous ones, one should worship their habit, which is the dwelling place of ēvam, for the sake of liberation; thus one should know the established view of matters Śaivite in the Śivajñānabodham.
Appendix 3

The transliteration from the Sanskrit of Śivāgrayogin's discussion "defining cit-śakti's validity as the means of cognition", translated and exegeted in Chapter 3, pp. 156-175, (Śivāgrabhāṣya, pp. 95-98).

Cic-chakteḥ pramāṇatva-nirūpaṇam
Nanu pramāṇasya kīm lakṣaṇam. Na tāvat pramiti-sādhanatvam dīpa-ādiśv-ativyāpteḥ. Tad-uktam śrīmat-pauṣkare [7:11]:
Nanu na syāt-kuto mānām yat-tat-pramiti sādhanam /

Naṇu prameya-saḥsiddhau sāmaṅī kena neṣyate /
Pramaṭra-āḍī-gśa anteṣu satsveva-gśa-niścayāt //
Tat-tat-pramatṛi-meyā-āḍī-vyāvahāra-vilopataḥ /
Māṭrī-māna-prameyaṇāṁ-tad-antarbhāvataḥ sthīteḥ //
Teṣāṁ tu vyatirekeṣa sāmagṛī ca na drīṣyate // iti Sāḍhana-sāmagry-ādīnām meyatvena māṇatvasya-ayuktavāt. Tad-uktam śrīmat-pauṅkare [7:12]:

Yān-meyāṁ na hi tan-mānaṁ yato mānena miyate / iti Ato na pramaṇa-sāmānaya-lakṣaṇaṁ yuktam-iti.


Prākṛitatva-aviśeṣena dṛig-āder-aviśeṣataḥ /
Asaṁvid-ātmakatvena na hi buddheḥ pramaṇatā // iti.


Iti buddhi-prakāśo'yam bhāva-pratyayalakṣaṇaḥ /
Bodha ity-ucyate bodha-vyakti-bhūmitayā paśoḥ // iti.
SELECTED BIBLIOGRAPHY
Selected Bibliography

Primary Sources


Ratnatrayam of Śrīkanthaśūri. Devakoṭṭai: Śaiva Siddhānta Paripālana Sahagraha, 1925.


**Secondary Sources**


Pillai, J.M. Nallaswami. Śivajñāna Siddhiyar of Aruṇandī Śivacārya. Translated from the Tamil with introduction, notes, glossary, etc. Madras: Meykandan Press, 1913.


Renou, L. Religions of Ancient India. 2nd ed. New Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal, 1953.


Articles


Alper, Harvey P. "Śiva and the Ubiquity of Consciousness", Journal of Indian Philosophy, 7 (1979), 345-407.


Mahadevan, T. M. P. "Śaivism, the History and Culture of the Indian People", Bhāratiya Vidyā Bhavan, IV (1955), 299-303; V (1957), 442-458; VI (1960), 556-557.


--------. "The Concept of Trans-personal Revelation in Hindu Philosophical Thinking: The Śaiva Point of View", typewritten, 47 pages.

--------. "Treatment of Karma in Śaiva-Siddhānta", typewritten, 24 pages.


Siddhānta Perumānram (1986), 30-36.


Sundaramoorthy, G. "Development of Epistemology in the Sanskrit Works on Śaiva Siddhānta", Indian Philosophical Annual, XIV (1980-81), 133-141.

Takedo, Kodo. "The Śaivadarśana of the Sarvadarśanasamgraha", Journal of Indian and Buddhist Studies, University of Tokyo, XXI, no. 2 (March 1973), 119-124.


**Theses**


Rajamanickam, M. "Development of Śaivism in South India", Madras University, 1950.

Sullivan, H.P. "The Śaiva Siddhānta School of Śaivism", University of Chicago, 1957.